



# OpenShift Container Platform 4.6

## Installing on OpenStack

Installing OpenShift Container Platform OpenStack clusters



# OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 Installing on OpenStack

---

Installing OpenShift Container Platform OpenStack clusters

## Legal Notice

Copyright © 2022 Red Hat, Inc.

The text of and illustrations in this document are licensed by Red Hat under a Creative Commons Attribution–Share Alike 3.0 Unported license ("CC-BY-SA"). An explanation of CC-BY-SA is available at

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>

. In accordance with CC-BY-SA, if you distribute this document or an adaptation of it, you must provide the URL for the original version.

Red Hat, as the licensor of this document, waives the right to enforce, and agrees not to assert, Section 4d of CC-BY-SA to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo, the Red Hat logo, JBoss, OpenShift, Fedora, the Infinity logo, and RHCE are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Linux<sup>®</sup> is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Java<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

XFS<sup>®</sup> is a trademark of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries.

MySQL<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

Node.js<sup>®</sup> is an official trademark of Joyent. Red Hat is not formally related to or endorsed by the official Joyent Node.js open source or commercial project.

The OpenStack<sup>®</sup> Word Mark and OpenStack logo are either registered trademarks/service marks or trademarks/service marks of the OpenStack Foundation, in the United States and other countries and are used with the OpenStack Foundation's permission. We are not affiliated with, endorsed or sponsored by the OpenStack Foundation, or the OpenStack community.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Abstract

This document provides instructions for installing and uninstalling OpenShift Container Platform clusters on OpenStack Platform.

## Table of Contents

<b>CHAPTER 1. INSTALLING ON OPENSTACK .....</b>	<b>6</b>
1.1. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK WITH CUSTOMIZATIONS	6
1.1.1. Prerequisites	6
1.1.2. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP	6
1.1.2.1. Control plane machines	7
1.1.2.2. Compute machines	7
1.1.2.3. Bootstrap machine	8
1.1.3. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform	8
1.1.4. Enabling Swift on RHOSP	8
1.1.5. Verifying external network access	9
1.1.6. Defining parameters for the installation program	10
1.1.7. Obtaining the installation program	12
1.1.8. Creating the installation configuration file	12
1.1.8.1. Configuring the cluster-wide proxy during installation	14
1.1.9. Installation configuration parameters	15
1.1.9.1. Required configuration parameters	15
1.1.9.2. Network configuration parameters	17
1.1.9.3. Optional configuration parameters	18
1.1.9.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters	23
1.1.9.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters	24
1.1.9.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments	27
1.1.9.7. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for RHOSP	28
1.1.10. Setting compute machine affinity	28
1.1.11. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent	30
1.1.12. Enabling access to the environment	32
1.1.12.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses	32
1.1.12.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses	33
1.1.13. Deploying the cluster	34
1.1.14. Verifying cluster status	35
1.1.15. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI	36
1.1.16. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform	37
1.1.17. Next steps	37
1.2. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK WITH KURYR	37
1.2.1. Prerequisites	37
1.2.2. About Kuryr SDN	37
1.2.3. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP with Kuryr	38
1.2.3.1. Increasing quota	40
1.2.3.2. Configuring Neutron	40
1.2.3.3. Configuring Octavia	40
1.2.3.3.1. The Octavia OVN Driver	44
1.2.3.4. Known limitations of installing with Kuryr	45
RHOSP general limitations	45
RHOSP version limitations	45
RHOSP environment limitations	45
RHOSP upgrade limitations	45
1.2.3.5. Control plane machines	46
1.2.3.6. Compute machines	46
1.2.3.7. Bootstrap machine	46
1.2.4. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform	47
1.2.5. Enabling Swift on RHOSP	47
1.2.6. Verifying external network access	48

1.2.7. Defining parameters for the installation program	49
1.2.8. Obtaining the installation program	51
1.2.9. Creating the installation configuration file	51
1.2.9.1. Configuring the cluster-wide proxy during installation	53
1.2.10. Installation configuration parameters	54
1.2.10.1. Required configuration parameters	54
1.2.10.2. Network configuration parameters	56
1.2.10.3. Optional configuration parameters	57
1.2.10.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters	62
1.2.10.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters	63
1.2.10.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments	66
1.2.10.7. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for RHOSP with Kuryr	66
1.2.10.8. Kuryr ports pools	67
1.2.10.9. Adjusting Kuryr ports pools during installation	68
1.2.11. Setting compute machine affinity	70
1.2.12. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent	72
1.2.13. Enabling access to the environment	73
1.2.13.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses	73
1.2.13.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses	74
1.2.14. Deploying the cluster	75
1.2.15. Verifying cluster status	76
1.2.16. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI	77
1.2.17. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform	78
1.2.18. Next steps	78
1.3. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK ON YOUR OWN INFRASTRUCTURE	78
1.3.1. Prerequisites	78
1.3.2. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform	79
1.3.3. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP	79
1.3.3.1. Control plane machines	80
1.3.3.2. Compute machines	80
1.3.3.3. Bootstrap machine	81
1.3.4. Downloading playbook dependencies	81
1.3.5. Downloading the installation playbooks	82
1.3.6. Obtaining the installation program	83
1.3.7. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent	84
1.3.8. Creating the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image	85
1.3.9. Verifying external network access	86
1.3.10. Enabling access to the environment	87
1.3.10.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses	87
1.3.10.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses	88
1.3.11. Defining parameters for the installation program	89
1.3.12. Creating the installation configuration file	91
1.3.13. Installation configuration parameters	92
1.3.13.1. Required configuration parameters	92
1.3.13.2. Network configuration parameters	94
1.3.13.3. Optional configuration parameters	95
1.3.13.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters	99
1.3.13.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters	100
1.3.13.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments	103
1.3.13.7. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for RHOSP	104
1.3.13.8. Setting a custom subnet for machines	105
1.3.13.9. Emptying compute machine pools	105
1.3.14. Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files	106

---

1.3.15. Preparing the bootstrap Ignition files	107
1.3.16. Creating control plane Ignition config files on RHOSP	110
1.3.17. Creating network resources on RHOSP	111
1.3.18. Creating the bootstrap machine on RHOSP	112
1.3.19. Creating the control plane machines on RHOSP	113
1.3.20. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI	114
1.3.21. Deleting bootstrap resources from RHOSP	114
1.3.22. Creating compute machines on RHOSP	115
1.3.23. Approving the certificate signing requests for your machines	115
1.3.24. Verifying a successful installation	118
1.3.25. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform	119
1.3.26. Next steps	119
1.4. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK WITH KURYR ON YOUR OWN INFRASTRUCTURE	119
1.4.1. Prerequisites	119
1.4.2. About Kuryr SDN	120
1.4.3. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP with Kuryr	120
1.4.3.1. Increasing quota	122
1.4.3.2. Configuring Neutron	122
1.4.3.3. Configuring Octavia	122
1.4.3.3.1. The Octavia OVN Driver	126
1.4.3.4. Known limitations of installing with Kuryr	126
RHOSP general limitations	127
RHOSP version limitations	127
RHOSP environment limitations	127
RHOSP upgrade limitations	127
1.4.3.5. Control plane machines	128
1.4.3.6. Compute machines	128
1.4.3.7. Bootstrap machine	128
1.4.4. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform	129
1.4.5. Downloading playbook dependencies	129
1.4.6. Downloading the installation playbooks	130
1.4.7. Obtaining the installation program	131
1.4.8. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent	132
1.4.9. Creating the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image	133
1.4.10. Verifying external network access	134
1.4.11. Enabling access to the environment	135
1.4.11.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses	135
1.4.11.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses	136
1.4.12. Defining parameters for the installation program	137
1.4.13. Creating the installation configuration file	139
1.4.14. Installation configuration parameters	140
1.4.14.1. Required configuration parameters	140
1.4.14.2. Network configuration parameters	142
1.4.14.3. Optional configuration parameters	143
1.4.14.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters	147
1.4.14.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters	148
1.4.14.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments	151
1.4.14.7. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for RHOSP with Kuryr	152
1.4.14.8. Kuryr ports pools	153
1.4.14.9. Adjusting Kuryr ports pools during installation	153
1.4.14.10. Setting a custom subnet for machines	155
1.4.14.11. Emptying compute machine pools	156
1.4.14.12. Modifying the network type	156

---

1.4.15. Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files	157
1.4.16. Preparing the bootstrap Ignition files	158
1.4.17. Creating control plane Ignition config files on RHOSP	161
1.4.18. Creating network resources on RHOSP	162
1.4.19. Creating the bootstrap machine on RHOSP	163
1.4.20. Creating the control plane machines on RHOSP	164
1.4.21. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI	165
1.4.22. Deleting bootstrap resources from RHOSP	165
1.4.23. Creating compute machines on RHOSP	166
1.4.24. Approving the certificate signing requests for your machines	167
1.4.25. Verifying a successful installation	169
1.4.26. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform	170
1.4.27. Next steps	170
1.5. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK IN A RESTRICTED NETWORK	170
1.5.1. About installations in restricted networks	171
1.5.1.1. Additional limits	171
1.5.2. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP	171
1.5.2.1. Control plane machines	172
1.5.2.2. Compute machines	172
1.5.2.3. Bootstrap machine	173
1.5.3. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform	173
1.5.4. Enabling Swift on RHOSP	173
1.5.5. Defining parameters for the installation program	174
1.5.6. Creating the RHCOS image for restricted network installations	175
1.5.7. Creating the installation configuration file	177
1.5.7.1. Configuring the cluster-wide proxy during installation	179
1.5.7.2. Installation configuration parameters	180
1.5.7.2.1. Required configuration parameters	181
1.5.7.2.2. Network configuration parameters	182
1.5.7.2.3. Optional configuration parameters	184
1.5.7.2.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters	189
1.5.7.2.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters	190
1.5.7.3. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for restricted OpenStack installations	193
1.5.8. Setting compute machine affinity	194
1.5.9. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent	196
1.5.10. Enabling access to the environment	197
1.5.10.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses	198
1.5.10.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses	199
1.5.11. Deploying the cluster	199
1.5.12. Verifying cluster status	201
1.5.13. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI	202
1.5.14. Disabling the default OperatorHub sources	202
1.5.15. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform	203
1.5.16. Next steps	203
1.6. UNINSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK	203
1.6.1. Removing a cluster that uses installer-provisioned infrastructure	203
1.7. UNINSTALLING A CLUSTER ON RHOSP FROM YOUR OWN INFRASTRUCTURE	204
1.7.1. Downloading playbook dependencies	204
1.7.2. Removing a cluster from RHOSP that uses your own infrastructure	205



# CHAPTER 1. INSTALLING ON OPENSTACK

## 1.1. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK WITH CUSTOMIZATIONS

In OpenShift Container Platform version 4.6, you can install a customized cluster on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP). To customize the installation, modify parameters in the `install-config.yaml` before you install the cluster.

### 1.1.1. Prerequisites

- Review details about the [OpenShift Container Platform installation and update](#) processes.
  - Verify that OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 is compatible with your RHOSP version in the *Available platforms* section. You can also compare platform support across different versions by viewing the [OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP support matrix](#).
- Verify that your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.
- Have a storage service installed in RHOSP, like block storage (Cinder) or object storage (Swift). Object storage is the recommended storage technology for OpenShift Container Platform registry cluster deployment. For more information, see [Optimizing storage](#).
- Have metadata service enabled in RHOSP

### 1.1.2. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP

To support an OpenShift Container Platform installation, your Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) quota must meet the following requirements:

**Table 1.1. Recommended resources for a default OpenShift Container Platform cluster on RHOSP**

Resource	Value
Floating IP addresses	3
Ports	15
Routers	1
Subnets	1
RAM	112 GB
vCPUs	28
Volume storage	275 GB
Instances	7
Security groups	3

Resource	Value
Security group rules	60

A cluster might function with fewer than recommended resources, but its performance is not guaranteed.



### IMPORTANT

If RHOSP object storage (Swift) is available and operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role, it is used as the default backend for the OpenShift Container Platform image registry. In this case, the volume storage requirement is 175 GB. Swift space requirements vary depending on the size of the image registry.



### NOTE

By default, your security group and security group rule quotas might be low. If you encounter problems, run **openstack quota set --secgroups 3 --secgroup-rules 60 <project>** as an administrator to increase them.

An OpenShift Container Platform deployment comprises control plane machines, compute machines, and a bootstrap machine.

#### 1.1.2.1. Control plane machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three control plane machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

#### 1.1.2.2. Compute machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three compute machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 8 GB memory, 2 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

### TIP

Compute machines host the applications that you run on OpenShift Container Platform; aim to run as many as you can.

### 1.1.2.3. Bootstrap machine

During installation, a bootstrap machine is temporarily provisioned to stand up the control plane. After the production control plane is ready, the bootstrap machine is deprovisioned.

The bootstrap machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

### 1.1.3. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, you require access to the Internet to install your cluster.

You must have Internet access to:

- Access [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) to download the installation program and perform subscription management. If the cluster has internet access and you do not disable Telemetry, that service automatically entitles your cluster.
- Access [Quay.io](#) to obtain the packages that are required to install your cluster.
- Obtain the packages that are required to perform cluster updates.

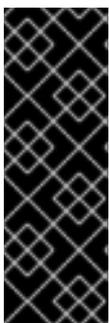


#### IMPORTANT

If your cluster cannot have direct Internet access, you can perform a restricted network installation on some types of infrastructure that you provision. During that process, you download the content that is required and use it to populate a mirror registry with the packages that you need to install a cluster and generate the installation program. With some installation types, the environment that you install your cluster in will not require Internet access. Before you update the cluster, you update the content of the mirror registry.

### 1.1.4. Enabling Swift on RHOSP

Swift is operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role. Add the role to an account before you run the installation program.



#### IMPORTANT

If [the Red Hat OpenStack Platform \(RHOSP\) object storage service](#), commonly known as Swift, is available, OpenShift Container Platform uses it as the image registry storage. If it is unavailable, the installation program relies on the RHOSP block storage service, commonly known as Cinder.

If Swift is present and you want to use it, you must enable access to it. If it is not present, or if you do not want to use it, skip this section.

#### Prerequisites

- You have a RHOSP administrator account on the target environment.

- The Swift service is installed.
- On [Ceph RGW](#), the **account in url** option is enabled.

## Procedure

To enable Swift on RHOSP:

1. As an administrator in the RHOSP CLI, add the **swiftoperator** role to the account that will access Swift:

```
$ openstack role add --user <user> --project <project> swiftoperator
```

Your RHOSP deployment can now use Swift for the image registry.

### 1.1.5. Verifying external network access

The OpenShift Container Platform installation process requires external network access. You must provide an external network value to it, or deployment fails. Before you begin the process, verify that a network with the external router type exists in Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

#### Prerequisites

- [Configure OpenStack's networking service to have DHCP agents forward instances' DNS queries](#)

#### Procedure

1. Using the RHOSP CLI, verify the name and ID of the 'External' network:

```
$ openstack network list --long -c ID -c Name -c "Router Type"
```

#### Example output

```
+-----+-----+-----+
| ID                | Name      | Router Type |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 148a8023-62a7-4672-b018-003462f8d7dc | public_network | External   |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

A network with an external router type appears in the network list. If at least one does not, see [Creating a default floating IP network](#) and [Creating a default provider network](#) .



## IMPORTANT

If the external network's CIDR range overlaps one of the default network ranges, you must change the matching network ranges in the **install-config.yaml** file before you start the installation process.

The default network ranges are:

Network	Range
<b>machineNetwork</b>	10.0.0.0/16
<b>serviceNetwork</b>	172.30.0.0/16
<b>clusterNetwork</b>	10.128.0.0/14



## WARNING

If the installation program finds multiple networks with the same name, it sets one of them at random. To avoid this behavior, create unique names for resources in RHOSP.



## NOTE

If the Neutron trunk service plug-in is enabled, a trunk port is created by default. For more information, see [Neutron trunk port](#).

### 1.1.6. Defining parameters for the installation program

The OpenShift Container Platform installation program relies on a file that is called **clouds.yaml**. The file describes Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters, including the project name, log in information, and authorization service URLs.

#### Procedure

1. Create the **clouds.yaml** file:
  - If your RHOSP distribution includes the Horizon web UI, generate a **clouds.yaml** file in it.



## IMPORTANT

Remember to add a password to the **auth** field. You can also keep secrets in [a separate file](#) from **clouds.yaml**.

- If your RHOSP distribution does not include the Horizon web UI, or you do not want to use Horizon, create the file yourself. For detailed information about **clouds.yaml**, see [Config files](#) in the RHOSP documentation.



```

clouds:
  shiftstack:
    auth:
      auth_url: http://10.10.14.42:5000/v3
      project_name: shiftstack
      username: shiftstack_user
      password: XXX
      user_domain_name: Default
      project_domain_name: Default
  dev-env:
    region_name: RegionOne
    auth:
      username: 'devuser'
      password: XXX
      project_name: 'devonly'
      auth_url: 'https://10.10.14.22:5001/v2.0'

```

2. If your RHOSP installation uses self-signed certificate authority (CA) certificates for endpoint authentication:

- a. Copy the certificate authority file to your machine.
- b. Add the machine to the certificate authority trust bundle:

```
$ sudo cp ca.crt.pem /etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/
```

- c. Update the trust bundle:

```
$ sudo update-ca-trust extract
```

- d. Add the **cacerts** key to the **clouds.yaml** file. The value must be an absolute, non-root-accessible path to the CA certificate:

```

clouds:
  shiftstack:
    ...
    cacert: "/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca.crt.pem"

```

### TIP

After you run the installer with a custom CA certificate, you can update the certificate by editing the value of the **ca-cert.pem** key in the **cloud-provider-config** keymap. On a command line, run:

```
$ oc edit configmap -n openshift-config cloud-provider-config
```

3. Place the **clouds.yaml** file in one of the following locations:
  - a. The value of the **OS\_CLIENT\_CONFIG\_FILE** environment variable
  - b. The current directory
  - c. A Unix-specific user configuration directory, for example **~/.config/openstack/clouds.yaml**

- d. A Unix-specific site configuration directory, for example `/etc/openstack/clouds.yaml`. The installation program searches for `clouds.yaml` in that order.

## 1.1.7. Obtaining the installation program

Before you install OpenShift Container Platform, download the installation file on a local computer.

### Prerequisites

- You have a computer that runs Linux or macOS, with 500 MB of local disk space

### Procedure

1. Access the [Infrastructure Provider](#) page on the OpenShift Cluster Manager site. If you have a Red Hat account, log in with your credentials. If you do not, create an account.
2. Select your infrastructure provider.
3. Navigate to the page for your installation type, download the installation program for your operating system, and place the file in the directory where you will store the installation configuration files.



#### IMPORTANT

The installation program creates several files on the computer that you use to install your cluster. You must keep the installation program and the files that the installation program creates after you finish installing the cluster. Both files are required to delete the cluster.



#### IMPORTANT

Deleting the files created by the installation program does not remove your cluster, even if the cluster failed during installation. To remove your cluster, complete the OpenShift Container Platform uninstallation procedures for your specific cloud provider.

4. Extract the installation program. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ tar xvf openshift-install-linux.tar.gz
```

5. Download your installation [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#). This pull secret allows you to authenticate with the services that are provided by the included authorities, including Quay.io, which serves the container images for OpenShift Container Platform components.

## 1.1.8. Creating the installation configuration file

You can customize the OpenShift Container Platform cluster you install on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

### Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster.

## Procedure

1. Create the **install-config.yaml** file.
  - a. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and run the following command:

```
$ ./openshift-install create install-config --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the directory name to store the files that the installation program creates.



### IMPORTANT

Specify an empty directory. Some installation assets, like bootstrap X.509 certificates have short expiration intervals, so you must not reuse an installation directory. If you want to reuse individual files from another cluster installation, you can copy them into your directory. However, the file names for the installation assets might change between releases. Use caution when copying installation files from an earlier OpenShift Container Platform version.

- b. At the prompts, provide the configuration details for your cloud:
  - i. Optional: Select an SSH key to use to access your cluster machines.



### NOTE

For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your **ssh-agent** process uses.

- ii. Select **openstack** as the platform to target.
  - iii. Specify the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) external network name to use for installing the cluster.
  - iv. Specify the floating IP address to use for external access to the OpenShift API.
  - v. Specify a RHOSP flavor with at least 16 GB RAM to use for control plane and compute nodes.
  - vi. Select the base domain to deploy the cluster to. All DNS records will be sub-domains of this base and will also include the cluster name.
  - vii. Enter a name for your cluster. The name must be 14 or fewer characters long.
  - viii. Paste the [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) .
2. Modify the **install-config.yaml** file. You can find more information about the available parameters in the **Installation configuration parameters** section.

3. Back up the **install-config.yaml** file so that you can use it to install multiple clusters.



### IMPORTANT

The **install-config.yaml** file is consumed during the installation process. If you want to reuse the file, you must back it up now.

### Additional resources

See [Installation configuration parameters section](#) for more information about the available parameters.

#### 1.1.8.1. Configuring the cluster-wide proxy during installation

Production environments can deny direct access to the Internet and instead have an HTTP or HTTPS proxy available. You can configure a new OpenShift Container Platform cluster to use a proxy by configuring the proxy settings in the **install-config.yaml** file.

### Prerequisites

- You have an existing **install-config.yaml** file.
- You reviewed the sites that your cluster requires access to and determined whether any of them need to bypass the proxy. By default, all cluster egress traffic is proxied, including calls to hosting cloud provider APIs. You added sites to the **Proxy** object's **spec.noProxy** field to bypass the proxy if necessary.



### NOTE

The **Proxy** object **status.noProxy** field is populated with the values of the **networking.machineNetwork[].cidr**, **networking.clusterNetwork[].cidr**, and **networking.serviceNetwork[]** fields from your installation configuration.

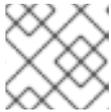
For installations on Amazon Web Services (AWS), Google Cloud Platform (GCP), Microsoft Azure, and Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP), the **Proxy** object **status.noProxy** field is also populated with the instance metadata endpoint (**169.254.169.254**).

### Procedure

1. Edit your **install-config.yaml** file and add the proxy settings. For example:

```
apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: my.domain.com
proxy:
  httpProxy: http://<username>:<pswd>@<ip>:<port> 1
  httpsProxy: https://<username>:<pswd>@<ip>:<port> 2
  noProxy: example.com 3
additionalTrustBundle: | 4
  -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
  <MY_TRUSTED_CA_CERT>
  -----END CERTIFICATE-----
...
```

- 1 A proxy URL to use for creating HTTP connections outside the cluster. The URL scheme must be **http**.
- 2 A proxy URL to use for creating HTTPS connections outside the cluster.
- 3 A comma-separated list of destination domain names, IP addresses, or other network CIDRs to exclude from proxying. Preface a domain with **.** to match subdomains only. For example, **.y.com** matches **x.y.com**, but not **y.com**. Use **\*** to bypass the proxy for all destinations.
- 4 If provided, the installation program generates a config map that is named **user-ca-bundle** in the **openshift-config** namespace to hold the additional CA certificates. If you provide **additionalTrustBundle** and at least one proxy setting, the **Proxy** object is configured to reference the **user-ca-bundle** config map in the **trustedCA** field. The Cluster Network Operator then creates a **trusted-ca-bundle** config map that merges the contents specified for the **trustedCA** parameter with the RHCOS trust bundle. The **additionalTrustBundle** field is required unless the proxy's identity certificate is signed by an authority from the RHCOS trust bundle.

**NOTE**

The installation program does not support the proxy **readinessEndpoints** field.

2. Save the file and reference it when installing OpenShift Container Platform.

The installation program creates a cluster-wide proxy that is named **cluster** that uses the proxy settings in the provided **install-config.yaml** file. If no proxy settings are provided, a **cluster Proxy** object is still created, but it will have a nil **spec**.

**NOTE**

Only the **Proxy** object named **cluster** is supported, and no additional proxies can be created.

### 1.1.9. Installation configuration parameters

Before you deploy an OpenShift Container Platform cluster, you provide parameter values to describe your account on the cloud platform that hosts your cluster and optionally customize your cluster's platform. When you create the **install-config.yaml** installation configuration file, you provide values for the required parameters through the command line. If you customize your cluster, you can modify the **install-config.yaml** file to provide more details about the platform.

**NOTE**

After installation, you cannot modify these parameters in the **install-config.yaml** file.

**IMPORTANT**

The **openshift-install** command does not validate field names for parameters. If an incorrect name is specified, the related file or object is not created, and no error is reported. Ensure that the field names for any parameters that are specified are correct.

#### 1.1.9.1. Required configuration parameters

Required installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

**Table 1.2. Required parameters**

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>apiVersion</b>	The API version for the <b>install-config.yaml</b> content. The current version is <b>v1</b> . The installer may also support older API versions.	String
<b>baseDomain</b>	The base domain of your cloud provider. The base domain is used to create routes to your OpenShift Container Platform cluster components. The full DNS name for your cluster is a combination of the <b>baseDomain</b> and <b>metadata.name</b> parameter values that uses the <b>&lt;metadata.name&gt;.&lt;baseDomain&gt;</b> format.	A fully-qualified domain or subdomain name, such as <b>example.com</b> .
<b>metadata</b>	Kubernetes resource <b>ObjectMeta</b> , from which only the <b>name</b> parameter is consumed.	Object
<b>metadata.name</b>	The name of the cluster. DNS records for the cluster are all subdomains of <b>{{.metadata.name}}</b> . <b>{{.baseDomain}}</b> .	String of lowercase letters, hyphens (-), and periods (.), such as <b>dev</b> . The string must be 14 characters or fewer long.
<b>platform</b>	The configuration for the specific platform upon which to perform the installation: <b>aws, baremetal, azure, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> . For additional information about <b>platform.&lt;platform&gt;</b> parameters, consult the following table for your specific platform.	Object

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>pullSecret</b>	Get a <a href="#">pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager</a> to authenticate downloading container images for OpenShift Container Platform components from services such as Quay.io.	<pre>{   "auths":{     "cloud.openshift.com":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     },     "quay.io":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     }   } }</pre>

### 1.1.9.2. Network configuration parameters

You can customize your installation configuration based on the requirements of your existing network infrastructure. For example, you can expand the IP address block for the cluster network or provide different IP address blocks than the defaults.

Only IPv4 addresses are supported.

Table 1.3. Network parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking</b>	The configuration for the cluster network.	Object   <b>NOTE</b> You cannot modify parameters specified by the <b>networking</b> object after installation.
<b>networking.networkType</b>	The cluster network provider Container Network Interface (CNI) plug-in to install.	Either <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> or <b>OVNKubernetes</b> . The default value is <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for pods.  The default value is <b>10.128.0.0/14</b> with a host prefix of <b>/23</b> .  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   clusterNetwork:     - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14       hostPrefix: 23</pre>

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.clusterNetwork</b> . An IP address block.  An IPv4 network.	An IP address block in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) notation. The prefix length for an IPv4 block is between <b>0</b> and <b>32</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.hostPrefix</b>	The subnet prefix length to assign to each individual node. For example, if <b>hostPrefix</b> is set to <b>23</b> then each node is assigned a <b>/23</b> subnet out of the given <b>cidr</b> . A <b>hostPrefix</b> value of <b>23</b> provides 510 ( $2^{(32 - 23)} - 2$ ) pod IP addresses.	A subnet prefix.  The default value is <b>23</b> .
<b>networking.serviceNetwork</b>	The IP address block for services. The default value is <b>172.30.0.0/16</b> .  The OpenShift SDN and OVN-Kubernetes network providers support only a single IP address block for the service network.	An array with an IP address block in CIDR format. For example:  <pre>networking:   serviceNetwork:     - 172.30.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for machines.  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   machineNetwork:     - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> . An IP address block. The default value is <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> for all platforms other than libvirt. For libvirt, the default value is <b>192.168.126.0/24</b> .	An IP network block in CIDR notation.  For example, <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> .   <b>NOTE</b>  Set the <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> to match the CIDR that the preferred NIC resides in.

### 1.1.9.3. Optional configuration parameters

Optional installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.4. Optional parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>additionalTrustBundle</b>	A PEM-encoded X.509 certificate bundle that is added to the nodes' trusted certificate store. This trust bundle may also be used when a proxy has been configured.	String
<b>compute</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the compute nodes.	Array of machine-pool objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.
<b>compute.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>compute.hyperthreading</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b>, on compute machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.</p> </div> </div>	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>compute.name</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>worker</b>
<b>compute.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider to host the worker machines. This parameter value must match the <b>controlPlane.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> , or <b>{}</b>
<b>compute.replicas</b>	The number of compute machines, which are also known as worker machines, to provision.	A positive integer greater than or equal to <b>2</b> . The default value is <b>3</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the control plane.	Array of <b>MachinePool</b> objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.
<b>controlPlane.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>controlPlane.hyperthreading</b>	Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b> , on control plane machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.   <b>IMPORTANT</b>  If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>controlPlane.name</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>master</b>
<b>controlPlane.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider that hosts the control plane machines. This parameter value must match the <b>compute.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere, or {}</b>
<b>controlPlane.replicas</b>	The number of control plane machines to provision.	The only supported value is <b>3</b> , which is the default value.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>credentialsMode</b>	<p>The Cloud Credential Operator (CCO) mode. If no mode is specified, the CCO dynamically tries to determine the capabilities of the provided credentials, with a preference for mint mode on the platforms where multiple modes are supported.</p> <div></div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Not all CCO modes are supported for all cloud providers. For more information on CCO modes, see the <i>Cloud Credential Operator</i> entry in the <i>Red Hat Operators reference content</i>.</p>	<b>Mint, Passthrough, Manual</b> , or an empty string ("").

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>fips</b>	<p>Enable or disable FIPS mode. The default is <b>false</b> (disabled). If FIPS mode is enabled, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) machines that OpenShift Container Platform runs on bypass the default Kubernetes cryptography suite and use the cryptography modules that are provided with RHCOS instead.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="flex: 1;">  <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>The use of FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries is only supported on OpenShift Container Platform deployments on the <b>x86_64</b> architecture.</p> </div> <div style="flex: 1;">  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>If you are using Azure File storage, you cannot enable FIPS mode.</p> </div> </div>	<b>false</b> or <b>true</b>
<b>imageContentSources</b>	Sources and repositories for the release-image content.	Array of objects. Includes a <b>source</b> and, optionally, <b>mirrors</b> , as described in the following rows of this table.
<b>imageContentSources.source</b>	Required if you use <b>imageContentSources</b> . Specify the repository that users refer to, for example, in image pull specifications.	String
<b>imageContentSources.mirrors</b>	Specify one or more repositories that may also contain the same images.	Array of strings

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>publish</b>	How to publish or expose the user-facing endpoints of your cluster, such as the Kubernetes API, OpenShift routes.	<p><b>Internal</b> or <b>External</b>. The default value is <b>External</b>.</p> <p>Setting this field to <b>Internal</b> is not supported on non-cloud platforms.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If the value of the field is set to <b>Internal</b>, the cluster will become non-functional. For more information, refer to <a href="#">BZ#1953035</a>.</p> </div> </div>
<b>sshKey</b>	<p>The SSH key or keys to authenticate access your cluster machines.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your <b>ssh-agent</b> process uses.</p> </div> </div>	<p>One or more keys. For example:</p> <pre>sshKey:   &lt;key1&gt;   &lt;key2&gt;   &lt;key3&gt;</pre>

#### 1.1.9.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters

Additional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.5. Additional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rotoVolume.size</b>	For compute machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rotoVolume.type</b>	For compute machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For control plane machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For control plane machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.cloud</b>	The name of the RHOSP cloud to use from the list of clouds in the <b>clouds.yaml</b> file.	String, for example <b>MyCloud</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b>	The RHOSP external network name to be used for installation.	String, for example <b>external</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.computeFlavor</b>	The RHOSP flavor to use for control plane and compute machines.	String, for example <b>m1.xlarge</b> .

### 1.1.9.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters

Optional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.6. Optional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with compute machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with compute machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with control plane machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with control plane machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.clusterOSImage</b>	<p>The location from which the installer downloads the RHCOS image.</p> <p>You must set this parameter to perform an installation in a restricted network.</p>	<p>An HTTP or HTTPS URL, optionally with an SHA-256 checksum.</p> <p>For example,  <b>http://mirror.example.com/images/rhcos-43.81.201912131630.0-openstack.x86_64.qcow2.gz?sha256=ffebbd68e8a1f2a245ca19522c16c86f67f9ac8e4e0c1f0a812b068b16f7265d</b>. The value can also be the name of an existing Glance image, for example <b>my-rhcos</b>.</p>
<b>platform.openstack.defaultMachinePlatform</b>	The default machine pool platform configuration.	<pre>{   "type": "ml.large",   "rootVolume": {     "size": 30,     "type": "performance"   } }</pre>
<b>platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP</b>	<p>An existing floating IP address to associate with the Ingress port. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.</p>	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.lbfloatingIP</b>	An existing floating IP address to associate with the API load balancer. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalDNS</b>	IP addresses for external DNS servers that cluster instances use for DNS resolution.	A list of IP addresses as strings. For example, <b>["8.8.8.8", "192.168.1.12"]</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.machinesSubnet</b>	<p>The UUID of a RHOSP subnet that the cluster's nodes use. Nodes and virtual IP (VIP) ports are created on this subnet.</p> <p>The first item in <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> must match the value of <b>machinesSubnet</b>.</p> <p>If you deploy to a custom subnet, you cannot specify an external DNS server to the OpenShift Container Platform installer. Instead, <a href="#">add DNS to the subnet in RHOSP</a>.</p>	A UUID as a string. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .

### 1.1.9.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments

Optionally, you can deploy a cluster on a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) subnet of your choice. The subnet's GUID is passed as the value of **platform.openstack.machinesSubnet** in the **install-config.yaml** file.

This subnet is used as the cluster's primary subnet; nodes and ports are created on it.

Before you run the OpenShift Container Platform installer with a custom subnet, verify that:

- The target network and subnet are available.
- DHCP is enabled on the target subnet.
- You can provide installer credentials that have permission to create ports on the target network.
- If your network configuration requires a router, it is created in RHOSP. Some configurations rely on routers for floating IP address translation.
- Your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.

**NOTE**

By default, the API VIP takes x.x.x.5 and the Ingress VIP takes x.x.x.7 from your network's CIDR block. To override these default values, set values for **platform.openstack.apiVIP** and **platform.openstack.ingressVIP** that are outside of the DHCP allocation pool.

**1.1.9.7. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for RHOSP**

This sample **install-config.yaml** demonstrates all of the possible Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) customization options.

**IMPORTANT**

This sample file is provided for reference only. You must obtain your **install-config.yaml** file by using the installation program.

```

apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: example.com
clusterID: os-test
controlPlane:
  name: master
  platform: {}
  replicas: 3
compute:
- name: worker
  platform:
    openstack:
      type: ml.large
  replicas: 3
metadata:
  name: example
networking:
  clusterNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14
    hostPrefix: 23
  machineNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16
  serviceNetwork:
  - 172.30.0.0/16
  networkType: OpenShiftSDN
platform:
  openstack:
    cloud: mycloud
    externalNetwork: external
    computeFlavor: m1.xlarge
    lbFloatingIP: 128.0.0.1
fips: false
pullSecret: '{"auths": ...}'
sshKey: ssh-ed25519 AAAA...

```

**1.1.10. Setting compute machine affinity**

Optionally, you can set the affinity policy for compute machines during installation. The installer does not select an affinity policy for compute machines by default.

You can also create machine sets that use particular RHOSP server groups after installation.



## NOTE

Control plane machines are created with a **soft-anti-affinity** policy.

## TIP

You can learn more about [RHOSP instance scheduling and placement](#) in the RHOSP documentation.

## Prerequisites

- Create the **install-config.yaml** file and complete any modifications to it.

## Procedure

1. Using the RHOSP command-line interface, create a server group for your compute machines. For example:

```
$ openstack \
  --os-compute-api-version=2.15 \
  server group create \
  --policy anti-affinity \
  my-openshift-worker-group
```

For more information, see the [server group create command documentation](#).

2. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and create the manifests:

```
$ ./openshift-install create manifests --dir=<installation_directory>
```

where:

### **installation\_directory**

Specifies the name of the directory that contains the **install-config.yaml** file for your cluster.

3. Open **manifests/99\_openshift-cluster-api\_worker-machineset-0.yaml**, the **MachineSet** definition file.
4. Add the property **serverGroupID** to the definition beneath the **spec.template.spec.providerSpec.value** property. For example:

```
apiVersion: machine.openshift.io/v1beta1
kind: MachineSet
metadata:
  labels:
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-role: <node_role>
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-type: <node_role>
  name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
  namespace: openshift-machine-api
spec:
  replicas: <number_of_replicas>
```

```

selector:
  matchLabels:
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machineset: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
template:
  metadata:
    labels:
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-role: <node_role>
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-type: <node_role>
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machineset: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
  spec:
    providerSpec:
      value:
        apiVersion: openstackproviderconfig.openshift.io/v1alpha1
        cloudName: openstack
        cloudsSecret:
          name: openstack-cloud-credentials
          namespace: openshift-machine-api
        flavor: <nova_flavor>
        image: <glance_image_name_or_location>
        serverGroupID: aaaaaaaa-bbbb-cccc-dddd-eeeeeeeeeeee 1
        kind: OpenstackProviderSpec
        networks:
          - filter: {}
            subnets:
              - filter:
                  name: <subnet_name>
                  tags: openshiftClusterID=<infrastructure_ID>
        securityGroups:
          - filter: {}
            name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
        serverMetadata:
          Name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
          openshiftClusterID: <infrastructure_ID>
        tags:
          - openshiftClusterID=<infrastructure_ID>
        trunk: true
        userDataSecret:
          name: <node_role>-user-data
        availabilityZone: <optional_openstack_availability_zone>

```

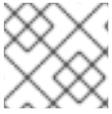
1 Add the UUID of your server group here.

- Optional: Back up the **manifests/99\_openshift-cluster-api\_worker-machineset-0.yaml** file. The installation program deletes the **manifests/** directory when creating the cluster.

When you install the cluster, the installer uses the **MachineSet** definition that you modified to create compute machines within your RHOSP server group.

### 1.1.11. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent

If you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery on your cluster, you must provide an SSH key to both your **ssh-agent** and the installation program. You can use this key to access the bootstrap machine in a public cluster to troubleshoot installation issues.

**NOTE**

In a production environment, you require disaster recovery and debugging.

You can use this key to SSH into the master nodes as the user **core**. When you deploy the cluster, the key is added to the **core** user's `~/.ssh/authorized_keys` list.

**Procedure**

1. If you do not have an SSH key that is configured for password-less authentication on your computer, create one. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ ssh-keygen -t ed25519 -N "" \
-f <path>/<file_name> 1
```

- 1 Specify the path and file name, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`, of the new SSH key. If you have an existing key pair, ensure your public key is in the your `~/.ssh` directory.

Running this command generates an SSH key that does not require a password in the location that you specified.

**NOTE**

If you plan to install an OpenShift Container Platform cluster that uses FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries on the **x86\_64** architecture, do not create a key that uses the **ed25519** algorithm. Instead, create a key that uses the **rsa** or **ecdsa** algorithm.

2. Start the **ssh-agent** process as a background task:

```
$ eval "$(ssh-agent -s)"
```

**Example output**

```
Agent pid 31874
```

**NOTE**

If your cluster is in FIPS mode, only use FIPS-compliant algorithms to generate the SSH key. The key must be either RSA or ECDSA.

3. Add your SSH private key to the **ssh-agent**:

```
$ ssh-add <path>/<file_name> 1
```

**Example output**

```
Identity added: /home/<you>/<path>/<file_name> (<computer_name>)
```

- 1 Specify the path and file name for your SSH private key, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`

## Next steps

- When you install OpenShift Container Platform, provide the SSH public key to the installation program.

### 1.1.12. Enabling access to the environment

At deployment, all OpenShift Container Platform machines are created in a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP)-tenant network. Therefore, they are not accessible directly in most RHOSP deployments.

You can configure OpenShift Container Platform API and application access by using floating IP addresses (FIPs) during installation. You can also complete an installation without configuring FIPs, but the installer will not configure a way to reach the API or applications externally.

#### 1.1.12.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses

Create floating IP (FIP) addresses for external access to the OpenShift Container Platform API and cluster applications.

#### Procedure

1. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the API FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "API <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"  
<external_network>
```

2. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the apps, or Ingress, FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "Ingress <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"  
<external_network>
```

3. Add records that follow these patterns to your DNS server for the API and Ingress FIPs:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <API_FIP>  
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <apps_FIP>
```



## NOTE

If you do not control the DNS server, you can access the cluster by adding the cluster domain names such as the following to your `/etc/hosts` file:

- `<api_floating_ip> api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> grafana-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> prometheus-k8s-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> oauth-openshift.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> console-openshift-console.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `application_floating_ip integrated-oauth-server-openshift-authentication.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`

The cluster domain names in the `/etc/hosts` file grant access to the web console and the monitoring interface of your cluster locally. You can also use the `kubectl` or `oc`. You can access the user applications by using the additional entries pointing to the `<application_floating_ip>`. This action makes the API and applications accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment, but does allow installation for development and testing.

4. Add the FIPs to the `install-config.yaml` file as the values of the following parameters:

- `platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP`
- `platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP`

If you use these values, you must also enter an external network as the value of the `platform.openstack.externalNetwork` parameter in the `install-config.yaml` file.

## TIP

You can make OpenShift Container Platform resources available outside of the cluster by assigning a floating IP address and updating your firewall configuration.

### 1.1.12.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses

You can install OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) without providing floating IP addresses.

In the `install-config.yaml` file, do not define the following parameters:

- `platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP`
- `platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP`

If you cannot provide an external network, you can also leave `platform.openstack.externalNetwork` blank. If you do not provide a value for `platform.openstack.externalNetwork`, a router is not created for

you, and, without additional action, the installer will fail to retrieve an image from Glance. You must configure external connectivity on your own.

If you run the installer from a system that cannot reach the cluster API due to a lack of floating IP addresses or name resolution, installation fails. To prevent installation failure in these cases, you can use a proxy network or run the installer from a system that is on the same network as your machines.



## NOTE

You can enable name resolution by creating DNS records for the API and Ingress ports. For example:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <api_port_IP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <ingress_port_IP>
```

If you do not control the DNS server, you can add the record to your `/etc/hosts` file. This action makes the API accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment but does allow installation for development and testing.

### 1.1.13. Deploying the cluster

You can install OpenShift Container Platform on a compatible cloud platform.



## IMPORTANT

You can run the **create cluster** command of the installation program only once, during initial installation.

### Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster.

### Procedure

1. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and initialize the cluster deployment:

```
$ ./openshift-install create cluster --dir <installation_directory> \ 1
--log-level=info 2
```

- 1 For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the location of your customized `./install-config.yaml` file.
- 2 To view different installation details, specify **warn**, **debug**, or **error** instead of **info**.



## NOTE

If the cloud provider account that you configured on your host does not have sufficient permissions to deploy the cluster, the installation process stops, and the missing permissions are displayed.

When the cluster deployment completes, directions for accessing your cluster, including a link to its web console and credentials for the **kubeadmin** user, display in your terminal.

### Example output

```
...
INFO Install complete!
INFO To access the cluster as the system:admin user when using 'oc', run 'export
KUBECONFIG=/home/myuser/install_dir/auth/kubeconfig'
INFO Access the OpenShift web-console here: https://console-openshift-
console.apps.mycluster.example.com
INFO Login to the console with user: "kubeadmin", and password: "4vYBz-Ee6gm-ymBZj-
Wt5AL"
INFO Time elapsed: 36m22s
```



### NOTE

The cluster access and credential information also outputs to **<installation\_directory>/openshift\_install.log** when an installation succeeds.



### IMPORTANT

- The Ignition config files that the installation program generates contain certificates that expire after 24 hours, which are then renewed at that time. If the cluster is shut down before renewing the certificates and the cluster is later restarted after the 24 hours have elapsed, the cluster automatically recovers the expired certificates. The exception is that you must manually approve the pending **node-bootstrapper** certificate signing requests (CSRs) to recover kubelet certificates. See the documentation for *Recovering from expired control plane certificates* for more information.
- It is recommended that you use Ignition config files within 12 hours after they are generated because the 24-hour certificate rotates from 16 to 22 hours after the cluster is installed. By using the Ignition config files within 12 hours, you can avoid installation failure if the certificate update runs during installation.



### IMPORTANT

You must not delete the installation program or the files that the installation program creates. Both are required to delete the cluster.

## 1.1.14. Verifying cluster status

You can verify your OpenShift Container Platform cluster's status during or after installation.

### Procedure

1. In the cluster environment, export the administrator's kubeconfig file:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server.

2. View the control plane and compute machines created after a deployment:

```
$ oc get nodes
```

3. View your cluster's version:

```
$ oc get clusterversion
```

4. View your Operators' status:

```
$ oc get clusteroperator
```

5. View all running pods in the cluster:

```
$ oc get pods -A
```

### 1.1.15. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI

You can log in to your cluster as a default system user by exporting the cluster **kubeconfig** file. The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server. The file is specific to a cluster and is created during OpenShift Container Platform installation.

#### Prerequisites

- You deployed an OpenShift Container Platform cluster.
- You installed the **oc** CLI.

#### Procedure

1. Export the **kubeadmin** credentials:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

2. Verify you can run **oc** commands successfully using the exported configuration:

```
$ oc whoami
```

#### Example output

```
system:admin
```

#### Additional resources

- See [Accessing the web console](#) for more details about accessing and understanding the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

### 1.1.16. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, the Telemetry service, which runs by default to provide metrics about cluster health and the success of updates, requires internet access. If your cluster is connected to the internet, Telemetry runs automatically, and your cluster is registered to [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#).

After you confirm that your [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) inventory is correct, either maintained automatically by Telemetry or manually by using OpenShift Cluster Manager, [use subscription watch](#) to track your OpenShift Container Platform subscriptions at the account or multi-cluster level.

#### Additional resources

- See [About remote health monitoring](#) for more information about the Telemetry service

### 1.1.17. Next steps

- [Customize your cluster](#).
- If necessary, you can [opt out of remote health reporting](#).
- If you need to enable external access to node ports, [configure ingress cluster traffic by using a node port](#).
- If you did not configure RHOSP to accept application traffic over floating IP addresses, [configure RHOSP access with floating IP addresses](#).

## 1.2. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK WITH KURYR

In OpenShift Container Platform version 4.6, you can install a customized cluster on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) that uses Kuryr SDN. To customize the installation, modify parameters in the **install-config.yaml** before you install the cluster.

### 1.2.1. Prerequisites

- Review details about the [OpenShift Container Platform installation and update](#) processes.
  - Verify that OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 is compatible with your RHOSP version in the *Available platforms* section. You can also compare platform support across different versions by viewing the [OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP support matrix](#).
- Verify that your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.
- Have a storage service installed in RHOSP, like block storage (Cinder) or object storage (Swift). Object storage is the recommended storage technology for OpenShift Container Platform registry cluster deployment. For more information, see [Optimizing storage](#).

### 1.2.2. About Kuryr SDN

[Kuryr](#) is a container network interface (CNI) plug-in solution that uses the [Neutron](#) and [Octavia](#) Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) services to provide networking for pods and Services.

Kuryr and OpenShift Container Platform integration is primarily designed for OpenShift Container Platform clusters running on RHOSP VMs. Kuryr improves the network performance by plugging OpenShift Container Platform pods into RHOSP SDN. In addition, it provides interconnectivity between pods and RHOSP virtual instances.

Kuryr components are installed as pods in OpenShift Container Platform using the **openshift-kuryr** namespace:

- **kuryr-controller** - a single service instance installed on a **master** node. This is modeled in OpenShift Container Platform as a **Deployment** object.
- **kuryr-cni** - a container installing and configuring Kuryr as a CNI driver on each OpenShift Container Platform node. This is modeled in OpenShift Container Platform as a **DaemonSet** object.

The Kuryr controller watches the OpenShift Container Platform API server for pod, service, and namespace create, update, and delete events. It maps the OpenShift Container Platform API calls to corresponding objects in Neutron and Octavia. This means that every network solution that implements the Neutron trunk port functionality can be used to back OpenShift Container Platform via Kuryr. This includes open source solutions such as Open vSwitch (OVS) and Open Virtual Network (OVN) as well as Neutron-compatible commercial SDNs.

Kuryr is recommended for OpenShift Container Platform deployments on encapsulated RHOSP tenant networks to avoid double encapsulation, such as running an encapsulated OpenShift Container Platform SDN over an RHOSP network.

If you use provider networks or tenant VLANs, you do not need to use Kuryr to avoid double encapsulation. The performance benefit is negligible. Depending on your configuration, though, using Kuryr to avoid having two overlays might still be beneficial.

Kuryr is not recommended in deployments where all of the following criteria are true:

- The RHOSP version is less than 16.
- The deployment uses UDP services, or a large number of TCP services on few hypervisors.

or

- The **ovn-octavia** Octavia driver is disabled.
- The deployment uses a large number of TCP services on few hypervisors.

### 1.2.3. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP with Kuryr

When using Kuryr SDN, the pods, services, namespaces, and network policies are using resources from the RHOSP quota; this increases the minimum requirements. Kuryr also has some additional requirements on top of what a default install requires.

Use the following quota to satisfy a default cluster's minimum requirements:

**Table 1.7. Recommended resources for a default OpenShift Container Platform cluster on RHOSP with Kuryr**

Resource	Value
Floating IP addresses	3 - plus the expected number of Services of LoadBalancer type
Ports	1500 - 1 needed per Pod
Routers	1
Subnets	250 - 1 needed per Namespace/Project
Networks	250 - 1 needed per Namespace/Project
RAM	112 GB
vCPUs	28
Volume storage	275 GB
Instances	7
Security groups	250 - 1 needed per Service and per NetworkPolicy
Security group rules	1000
Load balancers	100 - 1 needed per Service
Load balancer listeners	500 - 1 needed per Service-exposed port
Load balancer pools	500 - 1 needed per Service-exposed port

A cluster might function with fewer than recommended resources, but its performance is not guaranteed.



### IMPORTANT

If RHOSP object storage (Swift) is available and operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role, it is used as the default backend for the OpenShift Container Platform image registry. In this case, the volume storage requirement is 175 GB. Swift space requirements vary depending on the size of the image registry.



### IMPORTANT

If you are using Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) version 16 with the Amphora driver rather than the OVN Octavia driver, security groups are associated with service accounts instead of user projects.

Take the following notes into consideration when setting resources:

- The number of ports that are required is larger than the number of pods. Kuryr uses ports pools to have pre-created ports ready to be used by pods and speed up the pods' booting time.
- Each network policy is mapped into an RHOSP security group, and depending on the **NetworkPolicy** spec, one or more rules are added to the security group.
- Each service is mapped to an RHOSP load balancer. Consider this requirement when estimating the number of security groups required for the quota.  
If you are using RHOSP version 15 or earlier, or the **ovn-octavia driver**, each load balancer has a security group with the user project.
- The quota does not account for load balancer resources (such as VM resources), but you must consider these resources when you decide the RHOSP deployment's size. The default installation will have more than 50 load balancers; the clusters must be able to accommodate them.  
If you are using RHOSP version 16 with the OVN Octavia driver enabled, only one load balancer VM is generated; services are load balanced through OVN flows.

An OpenShift Container Platform deployment comprises control plane machines, compute machines, and a bootstrap machine.

To enable Kuryr SDN, your environment must meet the following requirements:

- Run RHOSP 13+.
- Have Overcloud with Octavia.
- Use Neutron Trunk ports extension.
- Use **openvswitch** firewall driver if ML2/OVS Neutron driver is used instead of **ovs-hybrid**.

### 1.2.3.1. Increasing quota

When using Kuryr SDN, you must increase quotas to satisfy the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) resources used by pods, services, namespaces, and network policies.

#### Procedure

- Increase the quotas for a project by running the following command:

```
$ sudo openstack quota set --secgroups 250 --secgroup-rules 1000 --ports 1500 --subnets 250 --networks 250 <project>
```

### 1.2.3.2. Configuring Neutron

Kuryr CNI leverages the Neutron Trunks extension to plug containers into the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) SDN, so you must use the **trunks** extension for Kuryr to properly work.

In addition, if you leverage the default ML2/OVS Neutron driver, the firewall must be set to **openvswitch** instead of **ovs\_hybrid** so that security groups are enforced on trunk subports and Kuryr can properly handle network policies.

### 1.2.3.3. Configuring Octavia

Kuryr SDN uses Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP)'s Octavia LBaaS to implement OpenShift Container Platform services. Thus, you must install and configure Octavia components in RHOSP to use Kuryr SDN.

To enable Octavia, you must include the Octavia service during the installation of the RHOSP Overcloud, or upgrade the Octavia service if the Overcloud already exists. The following steps for enabling Octavia apply to both a clean install of the Overcloud or an Overcloud update.



## NOTE

The following steps only capture the key pieces required during the [deployment of RHOSP](#) when dealing with Octavia. It is also important to note that [registry methods](#) vary.

This example uses the local registry method.

## Procedure

1. If you are using the local registry, create a template to upload the images to the registry. For example:

```
(undercloud) $ openstack overcloud container image prepare \
-e /usr/share/openstack-tripleo-heat-templates/environments/services-docker/octavia.yaml \
--namespace=registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13 \
--push-destination=<local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787 \
--prefix=openstack- \
--tag-from-label {version}-{release} \
--output-env-file=/home/stack/templates/overcloud_images.yaml \
--output-images-file /home/stack/local_registry_images.yaml
```

2. Verify that the **local\_registry\_images.yaml** file contains the Octavia images. For example:

```
...
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-api:13.0-43
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-health-manager:13.0-45
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-housekeeping:13.0-45
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-worker:13.0-44
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
```



## NOTE

The Octavia container versions vary depending upon the specific RHOSP release installed.

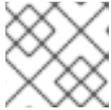
3. Pull the container images from **registry.redhat.io** to the Undercloud node:

```
(undercloud) $ sudo openstack overcloud container image upload \
--config-file /home/stack/local_registry_images.yaml \
--verbose
```

This may take some time depending on the speed of your network and Undercloud disk.

- Since an Octavia load balancer is used to access the OpenShift Container Platform API, you must increase their listeners' default timeouts for the connections. The default timeout is 50 seconds. Increase the timeout to 20 minutes by passing the following file to the Overcloud deploy command:

```
(undercloud) $ cat octavia_timeouts.yaml
parameter_defaults:
  OctaviaTimeoutClientData: 1200000
  OctaviaTimeoutMemberData: 1200000
```



#### NOTE

This is not needed for RHOSP 13.0.13+.

- Install or update your Overcloud environment with Octavia:

```
$ openstack overcloud deploy --templates \
  -e /usr/share/openstack-tripleo-heat-templates/environments/services-docker/octavia.yaml \
  -e octavia_timeouts.yaml
```



#### NOTE

This command only includes the files associated with Octavia; it varies based on your specific installation of RHOSP. See the RHOSP documentation for further information. For more information on customizing your Octavia installation, see [installation of Octavia using Director](#).



#### NOTE

When leveraging Kuryr SDN, the Overcloud installation requires the Neutron **trunk** extension. This is available by default on director deployments. Use the **openvswitch** firewall instead of the default **ovs-hybrid** when the Neutron backend is ML2/OVS. There is no need for modifications if the backend is ML2/OVN.

- In RHOSP versions earlier than 13.0.13, add the project ID to the **octavia.conf** configuration file after you create the project.
  - To enforce network policies across services, like when traffic goes through the Octavia load balancer, you must ensure Octavia creates the Amphora VM security groups on the user project. This change ensures that required load balancer security groups belong to that project, and that they can be updated to enforce services isolation.



#### NOTE

This task is unnecessary in RHOSP version 13.0.13 or later.

Octavia implements a new ACL API that restricts access to the load balancers VIP.

- Get the project ID



```
$ openstack project show <project>
```

### Example output

```
+-----+
| Field      | Value                |
+-----+
| description |                      |
| domain_id  | default              |
| enabled     | True                 |
| id          | PROJECT_ID           |
| is_domain  | False                |
| name        | *<project>*         |
| parent_id  | default              |
| tags        | []                   |
+-----+
```

- b. Add the project ID to **octavia.conf** for the controllers.
  - i. Source the **stackrc** file:

```
$ source stackrc # Undercloud credentials
```

- ii. List the Overcloud controllers:

```
$ openstack server list
```

### Example output

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ID                | Name          | Status | Networks |
| Image            | Flavor       |        |           |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 6bef8e73-2ba5-4860-a0b1-3937f8ca7e01 | controller-0 | ACTIVE | ctlplane=192.168.24.8 |
| dda3173a-ab26-47f8-a2dc-8473b4a67ab9 | compute-0   | ACTIVE | ctlplane=192.168.24.6 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

- iii. SSH into the controller(s).

```
$ ssh heat-admin@192.168.24.8
```

- iv. Edit the **octavia.conf** file to add the project into the list of projects where Amphora security groups are on the user's account.

```
# List of project IDs that are allowed to have Load balancer security groups
# belonging to them.
amp_secgroup_allowed_projects = PROJECT_ID
```

c. Restart the Octavia worker so the new configuration loads.

```
controller-0$ sudo docker restart octavia_worker
```



## NOTE

Depending on your RHOSP environment, Octavia might not support UDP listeners. If you use Kuryr SDN on RHOSP version 13.0.13 or earlier, UDP services are not supported. RHOSP version 16 or later support UDP.

### 1.2.3.3.1. The Octavia OVN Driver

Octavia supports multiple provider drivers through the Octavia API.

To see all available Octavia provider drivers, on a command line, enter:

```
$ openstack loadbalancer provider list
```

#### Example output

```
+-----+-----+
| name  | description          |
+-----+-----+
| amphora | The Octavia Amphora driver. |
| octavia | Deprecated alias of the Octavia Amphora driver. |
| ovn    | Octavia OVN driver.      |
+-----+-----+
```

Beginning with RHOSP version 16, the Octavia OVN provider driver (**ovn**) is supported on OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP deployments.

**ovn** is an integration driver for the load balancing that Octavia and OVN provide. It supports basic load balancing capabilities, and is based on OpenFlow rules. The driver is automatically enabled in Octavia by Director on deployments that use OVN Neutron ML2.

The Amphora provider driver is the default driver. If **ovn** is enabled, however, Kuryr uses it.

If Kuryr uses **ovn** instead of Amphora, it offers the following benefits:

- Decreased resource requirements. Kuryr does not require a load balancer VM for each service.
- Reduced network latency.
- Increased service creation speed by using OpenFlow rules instead of a VM for each service.
- Distributed load balancing actions across all nodes instead of centralized on Amphora VMs.

You can [configure your cluster to use the Octavia OVN driver](#) after your RHOSP cloud is upgraded from version 13 to version 16.

### 1.2.3.4. Known limitations of installing with Kuryr

Using OpenShift Container Platform with Kuryr SDN has several known limitations.

#### RHOSP general limitations

OpenShift Container Platform with Kuryr SDN does not support **Service** objects with type **NodePort**.

If the machines subnet is not connected to a router, or if the subnet is connected, but the router has no external gateway set, Kuryr cannot create floating IPs for **Service** objects with type **LoadBalancer**.

- Configuring the **sessionAffinity=ClientIP** property on **Service** objects does not have an effect. Kuryr does not support this setting.

#### RHOSP version limitations

Using OpenShift Container Platform with Kuryr SDN has several limitations that depend on the RHOSP version.

- RHOSP versions before 16 use the default Octavia load balancer driver (Amphora). This driver requires that one Amphora load balancer VM is deployed per OpenShift Container Platform service. Creating too many services can cause you to run out of resources. Deployments of later versions of RHOSP that have the OVN Octavia driver disabled also use the Amphora driver. They are subject to the same resource concerns as earlier versions of RHOSP.
- Octavia RHOSP versions before 13.0.13 do not support UDP listeners. Therefore, OpenShift Container Platform UDP services are not supported.
- Octavia RHOSP versions before 13.0.13 cannot listen to multiple protocols on the same port. Services that expose the same port to different protocols, like TCP and UDP, are not supported.
- Kuryr SDN does not support automatic unidling by a service.

#### RHOSP environment limitations

There are limitations when using Kuryr SDN that depend on your deployment environment.

Because of Octavia's lack of support for the UDP protocol and multiple listeners, if the RHOSP version is earlier than 13.0.13, Kuryr forces pods to use TCP for DNS resolution.

In Go versions 1.12 and earlier, applications that are compiled with CGO support disabled use UDP only. In this case, the native Go resolver does not recognize the **use-vc** option in **resolv.conf**, which controls whether TCP is forced for DNS resolution. As a result, UDP is still used for DNS resolution, which fails.

To ensure that TCP forcing is allowed, compile applications either with the environment variable **CGO\_ENABLED** set to **1**, i.e. **CGO\_ENABLED=1**, or ensure that the variable is absent.

In Go versions 1.13 and later, TCP is used automatically if DNS resolution using UDP fails.



#### NOTE

musl-based containers, including Alpine-based containers, do not support the **use-vc** option.

#### RHOSP upgrade limitations

As a result of the RHOSP upgrade process, the Octavia API might be changed, and upgrades to the Amphora images that are used for load balancers might be required.

You can address API changes on an individual basis.

If the Amphora image is upgraded, the RHOSP operator can handle existing load balancer VMs in two ways:

- Upgrade each VM by triggering a [load balancer failover](#).
- Leave responsibility for upgrading the VMs to users.

If the operator takes the first option, there might be short downtimes during failovers.

If the operator takes the second option, the existing load balancers will not support upgraded Octavia API features, like UDP listeners. In this case, users must recreate their Services to use these features.



### IMPORTANT

If OpenShift Container Platform detects a new Octavia version that supports UDP load balancing, it recreates the DNS service automatically. The service recreation ensures that the service default supports UDP load balancing.

The recreation causes the DNS service approximately one minute of downtime.

#### 1.2.3.5. Control plane machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three control plane machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

#### 1.2.3.6. Compute machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three compute machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 8 GB memory, 2 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

### TIP

Compute machines host the applications that you run on OpenShift Container Platform; aim to run as many as you can.

#### 1.2.3.7. Bootstrap machine

During installation, a bootstrap machine is temporarily provisioned to stand up the control plane. After the production control plane is ready, the bootstrap machine is deprovisioned.

The bootstrap machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

### 1.2.4. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, you require access to the Internet to install your cluster.

You must have Internet access to:

- Access [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) to download the installation program and perform subscription management. If the cluster has internet access and you do not disable Telemetry, that service automatically entitles your cluster.
- Access [Quay.io](#) to obtain the packages that are required to install your cluster.
- Obtain the packages that are required to perform cluster updates.



#### IMPORTANT

If your cluster cannot have direct Internet access, you can perform a restricted network installation on some types of infrastructure that you provision. During that process, you download the content that is required and use it to populate a mirror registry with the packages that you need to install a cluster and generate the installation program. With some installation types, the environment that you install your cluster in will not require Internet access. Before you update the cluster, you update the content of the mirror registry.

### 1.2.5. Enabling Swift on RHOSP

Swift is operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role. Add the role to an account before you run the installation program.



#### IMPORTANT

If [the Red Hat OpenStack Platform \(RHOSP\) object storage service](#), commonly known as Swift, is available, OpenShift Container Platform uses it as the image registry storage. If it is unavailable, the installation program relies on the RHOSP block storage service, commonly known as Cinder.

If Swift is present and you want to use it, you must enable access to it. If it is not present, or if you do not want to use it, skip this section.

#### Prerequisites

- You have a RHOSP administrator account on the target environment.
- The Swift service is installed.
- On [Ceph RGW](#), the **account in url** option is enabled.

## Procedure

To enable Swift on RHOSP:

1. As an administrator in the RHOSP CLI, add the **swiftoperator** role to the account that will access Swift:

```
$ openstack role add --user <user> --project <project> swiftoperator
```

Your RHOSP deployment can now use Swift for the image registry.

### 1.2.6. Verifying external network access

The OpenShift Container Platform installation process requires external network access. You must provide an external network value to it, or deployment fails. Before you begin the process, verify that a network with the external router type exists in Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

#### Prerequisites

- [Configure OpenStack's networking service to have DHCP agents forward instances' DNS queries](#)

#### Procedure

1. Using the RHOSP CLI, verify the name and ID of the 'External' network:

```
$ openstack network list --long -c ID -c Name -c "Router Type"
```

#### Example output

```
+-----+-----+-----+
| ID                | Name          | Router Type |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 148a8023-62a7-4672-b018-003462f8d7dc | public_network | External    |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

A network with an external router type appears in the network list. If at least one does not, see [Creating a default floating IP network](#) and [Creating a default provider network](#).

**IMPORTANT**

If the external network's CIDR range overlaps one of the default network ranges, you must change the matching network ranges in the **install-config.yaml** file before you start the installation process.

The default network ranges are:

Network	Range
<b>machineNetwork</b>	10.0.0.0/16
<b>serviceNetwork</b>	172.30.0.0/16
<b>clusterNetwork</b>	10.128.0.0/14

**WARNING**

If the installation program finds multiple networks with the same name, it sets one of them at random. To avoid this behavior, create unique names for resources in RHOSP.

**NOTE**

If the Neutron trunk service plug-in is enabled, a trunk port is created by default. For more information, see [Neutron trunk port](#).

### 1.2.7. Defining parameters for the installation program

The OpenShift Container Platform installation program relies on a file that is called **clouds.yaml**. The file describes Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters, including the project name, log in information, and authorization service URLs.

#### Procedure

1. Create the **clouds.yaml** file:
  - If your RHOSP distribution includes the Horizon web UI, generate a **clouds.yaml** file in it.

**IMPORTANT**

Remember to add a password to the **auth** field. You can also keep secrets in [a separate file](#) from **clouds.yaml**.

- If your RHOSP distribution does not include the Horizon web UI, or you do not want to use Horizon, create the file yourself. For detailed information about **clouds.yaml**, see [Config files](#) in the RHOSP documentation.



```

clouds:
  shiftstack:
    auth:
      auth_url: http://10.10.14.42:5000/v3
      project_name: shiftstack
      username: shiftstack_user
      password: XXX
      user_domain_name: Default
      project_domain_name: Default
  dev-env:
    region_name: RegionOne
    auth:
      username: 'devuser'
      password: XXX
      project_name: 'devonly'
      auth_url: 'https://10.10.14.22:5001/v2.0'

```

2. If your RHOSP installation uses self-signed certificate authority (CA) certificates for endpoint authentication:

- a. Copy the certificate authority file to your machine.
- b. Add the machine to the certificate authority trust bundle:

```
$ sudo cp ca.crt.pem /etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/
```

- c. Update the trust bundle:

```
$ sudo update-ca-trust extract
```

- d. Add the **cacerts** key to the **clouds.yaml** file. The value must be an absolute, non-root-accessible path to the CA certificate:

```

clouds:
  shiftstack:
    ...
    cacert: "/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca.crt.pem"

```

### TIP

After you run the installer with a custom CA certificate, you can update the certificate by editing the value of the **ca-cert.pem** key in the **cloud-provider-config** keymap. On a command line, run:

```
$ oc edit configmap -n openshift-config cloud-provider-config
```

3. Place the **clouds.yaml** file in one of the following locations:
  - a. The value of the **OS\_CLIENT\_CONFIG\_FILE** environment variable
  - b. The current directory
  - c. A Unix-specific user configuration directory, for example **~/.config/openstack/clouds.yaml**

- d. A Unix-specific site configuration directory, for example `/etc/openstack/clouds.yaml`. The installation program searches for `clouds.yaml` in that order.

## 1.2.8. Obtaining the installation program

Before you install OpenShift Container Platform, download the installation file on a local computer.

### Prerequisites

- You have a computer that runs Linux or macOS, with 500 MB of local disk space

### Procedure

1. Access the [Infrastructure Provider](#) page on the OpenShift Cluster Manager site. If you have a Red Hat account, log in with your credentials. If you do not, create an account.
2. Select your infrastructure provider.
3. Navigate to the page for your installation type, download the installation program for your operating system, and place the file in the directory where you will store the installation configuration files.



#### IMPORTANT

The installation program creates several files on the computer that you use to install your cluster. You must keep the installation program and the files that the installation program creates after you finish installing the cluster. Both files are required to delete the cluster.



#### IMPORTANT

Deleting the files created by the installation program does not remove your cluster, even if the cluster failed during installation. To remove your cluster, complete the OpenShift Container Platform uninstallation procedures for your specific cloud provider.

4. Extract the installation program. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ tar xvf openshift-install-linux.tar.gz
```

5. Download your installation [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#). This pull secret allows you to authenticate with the services that are provided by the included authorities, including Quay.io, which serves the container images for OpenShift Container Platform components.

## 1.2.9. Creating the installation configuration file

You can customize the OpenShift Container Platform cluster you install on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

### Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster.

## Procedure

1. Create the **install-config.yaml** file.
  - a. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and run the following command:

```
$ ./openshift-install create install-config --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the directory name to store the files that the installation program creates.



### IMPORTANT

Specify an empty directory. Some installation assets, like bootstrap X.509 certificates have short expiration intervals, so you must not reuse an installation directory. If you want to reuse individual files from another cluster installation, you can copy them into your directory. However, the file names for the installation assets might change between releases. Use caution when copying installation files from an earlier OpenShift Container Platform version.

- b. At the prompts, provide the configuration details for your cloud:
  - i. Optional: Select an SSH key to use to access your cluster machines.



### NOTE

For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your **ssh-agent** process uses.

- ii. Select **openstack** as the platform to target.
  - iii. Specify the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) external network name to use for installing the cluster.
  - iv. Specify the floating IP address to use for external access to the OpenShift API.
  - v. Specify a RHOSP flavor with at least 16 GB RAM to use for control plane and compute nodes.
  - vi. Select the base domain to deploy the cluster to. All DNS records will be sub-domains of this base and will also include the cluster name.
  - vii. Enter a name for your cluster. The name must be 14 or fewer characters long.
  - viii. Paste the [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) .
2. Modify the **install-config.yaml** file. You can find more information about the available parameters in the **Installation configuration parameters** section.

3. Back up the **install-config.yaml** file so that you can use it to install multiple clusters.



### IMPORTANT

The **install-config.yaml** file is consumed during the installation process. If you want to reuse the file, you must back it up now.

#### 1.2.9.1. Configuring the cluster-wide proxy during installation

Production environments can deny direct access to the Internet and instead have an HTTP or HTTPS proxy available. You can configure a new OpenShift Container Platform cluster to use a proxy by configuring the proxy settings in the **install-config.yaml** file.

#### Prerequisites

- You have an existing **install-config.yaml** file.
- You reviewed the sites that your cluster requires access to and determined whether any of them need to bypass the proxy. By default, all cluster egress traffic is proxied, including calls to hosting cloud provider APIs. You added sites to the **Proxy** object's **spec.noProxy** field to bypass the proxy if necessary.



### NOTE

The **Proxy** object **status.noProxy** field is populated with the values of the **networking.machineNetwork[].cidr**, **networking.clusterNetwork[].cidr**, and **networking.serviceNetwork[]** fields from your installation configuration.

For installations on Amazon Web Services (AWS), Google Cloud Platform (GCP), Microsoft Azure, and Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP), the **Proxy** object **status.noProxy** field is also populated with the instance metadata endpoint (**169.254.169.254**).

#### Procedure

1. Edit your **install-config.yaml** file and add the proxy settings. For example:

```
apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: my.domain.com
proxy:
  httpProxy: http://<username>:<pswd>@<ip>:<port> 1
  httpsProxy: https://<username>:<pswd>@<ip>:<port> 2
  noProxy: example.com 3
  additionalTrustBundle: | 4
    -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
    <MY_TRUSTED_CA_CERT>
    -----END CERTIFICATE-----
  ...
```

1 A proxy URL to use for creating HTTP connections outside the cluster. The URL scheme must be **http**.

2 A proxy URL to use for creating HTTPS connections outside the cluster.

- 3 A comma-separated list of destination domain names, IP addresses, or other network CIDRs to exclude from proxying. Preface a domain with `.` to match subdomains only. For
- 4 If provided, the installation program generates a config map that is named **user-ca-bundle** in the **openshift-config** namespace to hold the additional CA certificates. If you provide **additionalTrustBundle** and at least one proxy setting, the **Proxy** object is configured to reference the **user-ca-bundle** config map in the **trustedCA** field. The Cluster Network Operator then creates a **trusted-ca-bundle** config map that merges the contents specified for the **trustedCA** parameter with the RHCOS trust bundle. The **additionalTrustBundle** field is required unless the proxy's identity certificate is signed by an authority from the RHCOS trust bundle.

**NOTE**

The installation program does not support the proxy **readinessEndpoints** field.

2. Save the file and reference it when installing OpenShift Container Platform.

The installation program creates a cluster-wide proxy that is named **cluster** that uses the proxy settings in the provided **install-config.yaml** file. If no proxy settings are provided, a **cluster Proxy** object is still created, but it will have a nil **spec**.

**NOTE**

Only the **Proxy** object named **cluster** is supported, and no additional proxies can be created.

### 1.2.10. Installation configuration parameters

Before you deploy an OpenShift Container Platform cluster, you provide parameter values to describe your account on the cloud platform that hosts your cluster and optionally customize your cluster's platform. When you create the **install-config.yaml** installation configuration file, you provide values for the required parameters through the command line. If you customize your cluster, you can modify the **install-config.yaml** file to provide more details about the platform.

**NOTE**

After installation, you cannot modify these parameters in the **install-config.yaml** file.

**IMPORTANT**

The **openshift-install** command does not validate field names for parameters. If an incorrect name is specified, the related file or object is not created, and no error is reported. Ensure that the field names for any parameters that are specified are correct.

#### 1.2.10.1. Required configuration parameters

Required installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.8. Required parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>apiVersion</b>	The API version for the <b>install-config.yaml</b> content. The current version is <b>v1</b> . The installer may also support older API versions.	String
<b>baseDomain</b>	The base domain of your cloud provider. The base domain is used to create routes to your OpenShift Container Platform cluster components. The full DNS name for your cluster is a combination of the <b>baseDomain</b> and <b>metadata.name</b> parameter values that uses the <b>&lt;metadata.name&gt;.&lt;baseDomain&gt;</b> format.	A fully-qualified domain or subdomain name, such as <b>example.com</b> .
<b>metadata</b>	Kubernetes resource <b>ObjectMeta</b> , from which only the <b>name</b> parameter is consumed.	Object
<b>metadata.name</b>	The name of the cluster. DNS records for the cluster are all subdomains of <b>{{.metadata.name}}</b> . <b>{{.baseDomain}}</b> .	String of lowercase letters, hyphens (-), and periods (.), such as <b>dev</b> . The string must be 14 characters or fewer long.
<b>platform</b>	The configuration for the specific platform upon which to perform the installation: <b>aws, baremetal, azure, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> . For additional information about <b>platform.&lt;platform&gt;</b> parameters, consult the following table for your specific platform.	Object

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>pullSecret</b>	Get a <a href="#">pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager</a> to authenticate downloading container images for OpenShift Container Platform components from services such as Quay.io.	<pre>{   "auths":{     "cloud.openshift.com":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     },     "quay.io":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     }   } }</pre>

### 1.2.10.2. Network configuration parameters

You can customize your installation configuration based on the requirements of your existing network infrastructure. For example, you can expand the IP address block for the cluster network or provide different IP address blocks than the defaults.

Only IPv4 addresses are supported.

Table 1.9. Network parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking</b>	The configuration for the cluster network.	Object  <b>NOTE</b> You cannot modify parameters specified by the <b>networking</b> object after installation.
<b>networking.networkType</b>	The cluster network provider Container Network Interface (CNI) plug-in to install.	Either <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> or <b>OVNKubernetes</b> . The default value is <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for pods.  The default value is <b>10.128.0.0/14</b> with a host prefix of <b>/23</b> .  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   clusterNetwork:     - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14       hostPrefix: 23</pre>

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.clusterNetwork</b> . An IP address block.  An IPv4 network.	An IP address block in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) notation. The prefix length for an IPv4 block is between <b>0</b> and <b>32</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.hostPrefix</b>	The subnet prefix length to assign to each individual node. For example, if <b>hostPrefix</b> is set to <b>23</b> then each node is assigned a <b>/23</b> subnet out of the given <b>cidr</b> . A <b>hostPrefix</b> value of <b>23</b> provides 510 ( $2^{(32 - 23)} - 2$ ) pod IP addresses.	A subnet prefix.  The default value is <b>23</b> .
<b>networking.serviceNetwork</b>	The IP address block for services. The default value is <b>172.30.0.0/16</b> .  The OpenShift SDN and OVN-Kubernetes network providers support only a single IP address block for the service network.	An array with an IP address block in CIDR format. For example:  <pre>networking:   serviceNetwork:     - 172.30.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for machines.  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   machineNetwork:     - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> . An IP address block. The default value is <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> for all platforms other than libvirt. For libvirt, the default value is <b>192.168.126.0/24</b> .	An IP network block in CIDR notation.  For example, <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> .   <b>NOTE</b>  Set the <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> to match the CIDR that the preferred NIC resides in.

### 1.2.10.3. Optional configuration parameters

Optional installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.10. Optional parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>additionalTrustBundle</b>	A PEM-encoded X.509 certificate bundle that is added to the nodes' trusted certificate store. This trust bundle may also be used when a proxy has been configured.	String
<b>compute</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the compute nodes.	Array of machine-pool objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.
<b>compute.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>compute.hyperthreading</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b>, on compute machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.</p> </div> </div>	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>compute.name</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>worker</b>
<b>compute.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider to host the worker machines. This parameter value must match the <b>controlPlane.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere, or {}</b>
<b>compute.replicas</b>	The number of compute machines, which are also known as worker machines, to provision.	A positive integer greater than or equal to <b>2</b> . The default value is <b>3</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the control plane.	Array of <b>MachinePool</b> objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.
<b>controlPlane.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>controlPlane.hypertreading</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b>, on control plane machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.</p> </div> </div>	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>controlPlane.name</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>master</b>
<b>controlPlane.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider that hosts the control plane machines. This parameter value must match the <b>compute.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> , or <b>{}</b>
<b>controlPlane.replicas</b>	The number of control plane machines to provision.	The only supported value is <b>3</b> , which is the default value.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>credentialsMode</b>	<p>The Cloud Credential Operator (CCO) mode. If no mode is specified, the CCO dynamically tries to determine the capabilities of the provided credentials, with a preference for mint mode on the platforms where multiple modes are supported.</p> <p> <b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Not all CCO modes are supported for all cloud providers. For more information on CCO modes, see the <i>Cloud Credential Operator</i> entry in the <i>Red Hat Operators reference</i> content.</p>	<b>Mint, Passthrough, Manual</b> , or an empty string ("").

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>fips</b>	<p>Enable or disable FIPS mode. The default is <b>false</b> (disabled). If FIPS mode is enabled, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) machines that OpenShift Container Platform runs on bypass the default Kubernetes cryptography suite and use the cryptography modules that are provided with RHCOS instead.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="width: 40px; height: 40px; background: repeating-linear-gradient(45deg, transparent, transparent 2px, black 2px, black 4px); margin-right: 10px;"></div> <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>The use of FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries is only supported on OpenShift Container Platform deployments on the <b>x86_64</b> architecture.</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="width: 40px; height: 40px; background: repeating-linear-gradient(-45deg, transparent, transparent 2px, black 2px, black 4px); margin-right: 10px;"></div> <div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>If you are using Azure File storage, you cannot enable FIPS mode.</p> </div> </div>	<b>false</b> or <b>true</b>
<b>imageContentSources</b>	Sources and repositories for the release-image content.	Array of objects. Includes a <b>source</b> and, optionally, <b>mirrors</b> , as described in the following rows of this table.
<b>imageContentSources.source</b>	Required if you use <b>imageContentSources</b> . Specify the repository that users refer to, for example, in image pull specifications.	String
<b>imageContentSources.mirrors</b>	Specify one or more repositories that may also contain the same images.	Array of strings

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>publish</b>	How to publish or expose the user-facing endpoints of your cluster, such as the Kubernetes API, OpenShift routes.	<p><b>Internal</b> or <b>External</b>. The default value is <b>External</b>.</p> <p>Setting this field to <b>Internal</b> is not supported on non-cloud platforms.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If the value of the field is set to <b>Internal</b>, the cluster will become non-functional. For more information, refer to <a href="#">BZ#1953035</a>.</p> </div>
<b>sshKey</b>	<p>The SSH key or keys to authenticate access your cluster machines.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your <b>ssh-agent</b> process uses.</p> </div>	<p>One or more keys. For example:</p> <pre>sshKey:   &lt;key1&gt;   &lt;key2&gt;   &lt;key3&gt;</pre>

#### 1.2.10.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters

Additional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.11. Additional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For compute machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For compute machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For control plane machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For control plane machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.cloud</b>	The name of the RHOSP cloud to use from the list of clouds in the <b>clouds.yaml</b> file.	String, for example <b>MyCloud</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b>	The RHOSP external network name to be used for installation.	String, for example <b>external</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.computeFlavor</b>	The RHOSP flavor to use for control plane and compute machines.	String, for example <b>m1.xlarge</b> .

### 1.2.10.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters

Optional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.12. Optional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with compute machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with compute machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with control plane machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with control plane machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.clusterOSImage</b>	<p>The location from which the installer downloads the RHCOS image.</p> <p>You must set this parameter to perform an installation in a restricted network.</p>	<p>An HTTP or HTTPS URL, optionally with an SHA-256 checksum.</p> <p>For example,  <b>http://mirror.example.com/images/rhcos-43.81.201912131630.0-openstack.x86_64.qcow2.gz?sha256=ffebbd68e8a1f2a245ca19522c16c86f67f9ac8e4e0c1f0a812b068b16f7265d</b>. The value can also be the name of an existing Glance image, for example <b>my-rhcos</b>.</p>
<b>platform.openstack.defaultMachinePlatform</b>	The default machine pool platform configuration.	<pre>{   "type": "ml.large",   "rootVolume": {     "size": 30,     "type": "performance"   } }</pre>
<b>platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP</b>	An existing floating IP address to associate with the Ingress port. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP</b>	An existing floating IP address to associate with the API load balancer. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalDNS</b>	IP addresses for external DNS servers that cluster instances use for DNS resolution.	A list of IP addresses as strings. For example, <b>["8.8.8.8", "192.168.1.12"]</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.machinesSubnet</b>	<p>The UUID of a RHOSP subnet that the cluster's nodes use. Nodes and virtual IP (VIP) ports are created on this subnet.</p> <p>The first item in <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> must match the value of <b>machinesSubnet</b>.</p> <p>If you deploy to a custom subnet, you cannot specify an external DNS server to the OpenShift Container Platform installer. Instead, <a href="#">add DNS to the subnet in RHOSP</a>.</p>	A UUID as a string. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .

#### 1.2.10.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments

Optionally, you can deploy a cluster on a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) subnet of your choice. The subnet's GUID is passed as the value of **platform.openstack.machinesSubnet** in the **install-config.yaml** file.

This subnet is used as the cluster's primary subnet; nodes and ports are created on it.

Before you run the OpenShift Container Platform installer with a custom subnet, verify that:

- The target network and subnet are available.
- DHCP is enabled on the target subnet.
- You can provide installer credentials that have permission to create ports on the target network.
- If your network configuration requires a router, it is created in RHOSP. Some configurations rely on routers for floating IP address translation.
- Your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.



#### NOTE

By default, the API VIP takes x.x.x.5 and the Ingress VIP takes x.x.x.7 from your network's CIDR block. To override these default values, set values for **platform.openstack.apiVIP** and **platform.openstack.ingressVIP** that are outside of the DHCP allocation pool.

#### 1.2.10.7. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for RHOSP with Kuryr

To deploy with Kuryr SDN instead of the default OpenShift SDN, you must modify the **install-config.yaml** file to include **Kuryr** as the desired **networking.networkType** and proceed with the default OpenShift Container Platform SDN installation steps. This sample **install-config.yaml** demonstrates all

of the possible Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) customization options.



## IMPORTANT

This sample file is provided for reference only. You must obtain your **install-config.yaml** file by using the installation program.

```

apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: example.com
clusterID: os-test
controlPlane:
  name: master
  platform: {}
  replicas: 3
compute:
- name: worker
  platform:
    openstack:
      type: ml.large
  replicas: 3
metadata:
  name: example
networking:
  clusterNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14
    hostPrefix: 23
  machineNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16
  serviceNetwork:
  - 172.30.0.0/16 1
  networkType: Kuryr
platform:
  openstack:
    cloud: mycloud
    externalNetwork: external
    computeFlavor: m1.xlarge
    lbFloatingIP: 128.0.0.1
    trunkSupport: true 2
    octaviaSupport: true 3
pullSecret: '{"auths": ...}'
sshKey: ssh-ed25519 AAAA...

```

- 1 The Amphora Octavia driver creates two ports per load balancer. As a result, the service subnet that the installer creates is twice the size of the CIDR that is specified as the value of the **serviceNetwork** property. The larger range is required to prevent IP address conflicts.
- 2 3 Both **trunkSupport** and **octaviaSupport** are automatically discovered by the installer, so there is no need to set them. But if your environment does not meet both requirements, Kuryr SDN will not properly work. Trunks are needed to connect the pods to the RHOSP network and Octavia is required to create the OpenShift Container Platform services.

### 1.2.10.8. Kuryr ports pools

A Kuryr ports pool maintains a number of ports on standby for pod creation.

Keeping ports on standby minimizes pod creation time. Without ports pools, Kuryr must explicitly request port creation or deletion whenever a pod is created or deleted.

The Neutron ports that Kuryr uses are created in subnets that are tied to namespaces. These pod ports are also added as subports to the primary port of OpenShift Container Platform cluster nodes.

Because Kuryr keeps each namespace in a separate subnet, a separate ports pool is maintained for each namespace-worker pair.

Prior to installing a cluster, you can set the following parameters in the **cluster-network-03-config.yml** manifest file to configure ports pool behavior:

- The **enablePortPoolsPrepopulation** parameter controls pool prepopulation, which forces Kuryr to add ports to the pool when it is created, such as when a new host is added, or a new namespace is created. The default value is **false**.
- The **poolMinPorts** parameter is the minimum number of free ports that are kept in the pool. The default value is **1**.
- The **poolMaxPorts** parameter is the maximum number of free ports that are kept in the pool. A value of **0** disables that upper bound. This is the default setting. If your OpenStack port quota is low, or you have a limited number of IP addresses on the pod network, consider setting this option to ensure that unneeded ports are deleted.
- The **poolBatchPorts** parameter defines the maximum number of Neutron ports that can be created at once. The default value is **3**.

### 1.2.10.9. Adjusting Kuryr ports pools during installation

During installation, you can configure how Kuryr manages Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) Neutron ports to control the speed and efficiency of pod creation.

#### Prerequisites

- Create and modify the **install-config.yaml** file.

#### Procedure

1. From a command line, create the manifest files:

```
$ ./openshift-install create manifests --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1 For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the name of the directory that contains the **install-config.yaml** file for your cluster.

2. Create a file that is named **cluster-network-03-config.yml** in the **<installation\_directory>/manifests/** directory:

```
$ touch <installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-network-03-config.yml 1
```

- 1 For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the directory name that contains the **manifests/** directory for your cluster.

After creating the file, several network configuration files are in the **manifests/** directory, as shown:

```
$ ls <installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-network-*
```

### Example output

```
cluster-network-01-crd.yml
cluster-network-02-config.yml
cluster-network-03-config.yml
```

- Open the **cluster-network-03-config.yml** file in an editor, and enter a custom resource (CR) that describes the Cluster Network Operator configuration that you want:

```
$ oc edit networks.operator.openshift.io cluster
```

- Edit the settings to meet your requirements. The following file is provided as an example:

```
apiVersion: operator.openshift.io/v1
kind: Network
metadata:
  name: cluster
spec:
  clusterNetwork:
    - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14
      hostPrefix: 23
  serviceNetwork:
    - 172.30.0.0/16
  defaultNetwork:
    type: Kuryr
    kuryrConfig:
      enablePortPoolsPrepopulation: false 1
      poolMinPorts: 1 2
      poolBatchPorts: 3 3
      poolMaxPorts: 5 4
      openstackServiceNetwork: 172.30.0.0/15 5
```

- 1 Set the value of **enablePortPoolsPrepopulation** to **true** to make Kuryr create new Neutron ports after a namespace is created or a new node is added to the cluster. This setting raises the Neutron ports quota but can reduce the time that is required to spawn pods. The default value is **false**.
- 2 Kuryr creates new ports for a pool if the number of free ports in that pool is lower than the value of **poolMinPorts**. The default value is **1**.
- 3 **poolBatchPorts** controls the number of new ports that are created if the number of free ports is lower than the value of **poolMinPorts**. The default value is **3**.
- 4 If the number of free ports in a pool is higher than the value of **poolMaxPorts**, Kuryr deletes them until the number matches that value. Setting this value to **0** disables this upper bound, preventing pools from shrinking. The default value is **0**.
- 5 The **openStackServiceNetwork** parameter defines the CIDR range of the network from which IP addresses are allocated to RHOSP Octavia's LoadBalancers.

If this parameter is used with the Amphora driver, Octavia takes two IP addresses from this network for each load balancer: one for OpenShift and the other for VRRP connections. Because these IP addresses are managed by OpenShift Container Platform and Neutron respectively, they must come from different pools. Therefore, the value of **openStackServiceNetwork** must be at least twice the size of the value of **serviceNetwork**, and the value of **serviceNetwork** must overlap entirely with the range that is defined by **openStackServiceNetwork**.

The CNO verifies that VRRP IP addresses that are taken from the range that is defined by this parameter do not overlap with the range that is defined by the **serviceNetwork** parameter.

If this parameter is not set, the CNO uses an expanded value of **serviceNetwork** that is determined by decrementing the prefix size by 1.

5. Save the **cluster-network-03-config.yml** file, and exit the text editor.
6. Optional: Back up the **manifests/cluster-network-03-config.yml** file. The installation program deletes the **manifests/** directory while creating the cluster.

### 1.2.11. Setting compute machine affinity

Optionally, you can set the affinity policy for compute machines during installation. The installer does not select an affinity policy for compute machines by default.

You can also create machine sets that use particular RHOSP server groups after installation.



#### NOTE

Control plane machines are created with a **soft-anti-affinity** policy.

#### TIP

You can learn more about [RHOSP instance scheduling and placement](#) in the RHOSP documentation.

#### Prerequisites

- Create the **install-config.yml** file and complete any modifications to it.

#### Procedure

1. Using the RHOSP command-line interface, create a server group for your compute machines. For example:

```
$ openstack \
  --os-compute-api-version=2.15 \
  server group create \
  --policy anti-affinity \
  my-openshift-worker-group
```

For more information, see the [server group create command documentation](#).

2. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and create the manifests:

```
$ ./openshift-install create manifests --dir=<installation_directory>
```

where:

### installation\_directory

Specifies the name of the directory that contains the **install-config.yaml** file for your cluster.

3. Open **manifests/99\_openshift-cluster-api\_worker-machineset-0.yaml**, the **MachineSet** definition file.
4. Add the property **serverGroupID** to the definition beneath the **spec.template.spec.providerSpec.value** property. For example:

```

apiVersion: machine.openshift.io/v1beta1
kind: MachineSet
metadata:
  labels:
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-role: <node_role>
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-type: <node_role>
  name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
  namespace: openshift-machine-api
spec:
  replicas: <number_of_replicas>
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machineset: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-role: <node_role>
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-type: <node_role>
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machineset: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
    spec:
      providerSpec:
        value:
          apiVersion: openstackproviderconfig.openshift.io/v1alpha1
          cloudName: openstack
          cloudsSecret:
            name: openstack-cloud-credentials
            namespace: openshift-machine-api
          flavor: <nova_flavor>
          image: <glance_image_name_or_location>
          serverGroupID: aaaaaaaa-bbbb-cccc-dddd-eeeeeeeeeeee 1
          kind: OpenstackProviderSpec
          networks:
            - filter: {}
              subnets:
                - filter:
                    name: <subnet_name>
                    tags: openshiftClusterID=<infrastructure_ID>
          securityGroups:
            - filter: {}
              name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
          serverMetadata:

```

```
Name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
openshiftClusterID: <infrastructure_ID>
tags:
- openshiftClusterID=<infrastructure_ID>
trunk: true
userDataSecret:
  name: <node_role>-user-data
availabilityZone: <optional_openstack_availability_zone>
```

- 1 Add the UUID of your server group here.

5. Optional: Back up the **manifests/99\_openshift-cluster-api\_worker-machineset-0.yaml** file. The installation program deletes the **manifests/** directory when creating the cluster.

When you install the cluster, the installer uses the **MachineSet** definition that you modified to create compute machines within your RHOSP server group.

### 1.2.12. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent

If you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery on your cluster, you must provide an SSH key to both your **ssh-agent** and the installation program. You can use this key to access the bootstrap machine in a public cluster to troubleshoot installation issues.



#### NOTE

In a production environment, you require disaster recovery and debugging.

You can use this key to SSH into the master nodes as the user **core**. When you deploy the cluster, the key is added to the **core** user's **~/.ssh/authorized\_keys** list.

#### Procedure

1. If you do not have an SSH key that is configured for password-less authentication on your computer, create one. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ ssh-keygen -t ed25519 -N "" \
-f <path>/<file_name> 1
```

- 1 Specify the path and file name, such as **~/.ssh/id\_rsa**, of the new SSH key. If you have an existing key pair, ensure your public key is in the your **~/.ssh** directory.

Running this command generates an SSH key that does not require a password in the location that you specified.



#### NOTE

If you plan to install an OpenShift Container Platform cluster that uses FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries on the **x86\_64** architecture, do not create a key that uses the **ed25519** algorithm. Instead, create a key that uses the **rsa** or **ecdsa** algorithm.

2. Start the **ssh-agent** process as a background task:

```
$ eval "$(ssh-agent -s)"
```

#### Example output

```
Agent pid 31874
```



#### NOTE

If your cluster is in FIPS mode, only use FIPS-compliant algorithms to generate the SSH key. The key must be either RSA or ECDSA.

3. Add your SSH private key to the **ssh-agent**:

```
$ ssh-add <path>/<file_name> 1
```

#### Example output

```
Identity added: /home/<you>/<path>/<file_name> (<computer_name>)
```

- 1** Specify the path and file name for your SSH private key, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`

#### Next steps

- When you install OpenShift Container Platform, provide the SSH public key to the installation program.

### 1.2.13. Enabling access to the environment

At deployment, all OpenShift Container Platform machines are created in a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP)-tenant network. Therefore, they are not accessible directly in most RHOSP deployments.

You can configure OpenShift Container Platform API and application access by using floating IP addresses (FIPs) during installation. You can also complete an installation without configuring FIPs, but the installer will not configure a way to reach the API or applications externally.

#### 1.2.13.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses

Create floating IP (FIP) addresses for external access to the OpenShift Container Platform API and cluster applications.

#### Procedure

1. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the API FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "API <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"  
<external_network>
```

2. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the apps, or Ingress, FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "Ingress <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"
<external_network>
```

3. Add records that follow these patterns to your DNS server for the API and Ingress FIPs:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <API_FIP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <apps_FIP>
```



## NOTE

If you do not control the DNS server, you can access the cluster by adding the cluster domain names such as the following to your `/etc/hosts` file:

- `<api_floating_ip> api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> grafana-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> prometheus-k8s-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> oauth-openshift.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> console-openshift-console.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `application_floating_ip integrated-oauth-server-openshift-authentication.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`

The cluster domain names in the `/etc/hosts` file grant access to the web console and the monitoring interface of your cluster locally. You can also use the `kubectl` or `oc`. You can access the user applications by using the additional entries pointing to the `<application_floating_ip>`. This action makes the API and applications accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment, but does allow installation for development and testing.

4. Add the FIPs to the `install-config.yaml` file as the values of the following parameters:

- `platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP`
- `platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP`

If you use these values, you must also enter an external network as the value of the `platform.openstack.externalNetwork` parameter in the `install-config.yaml` file.

## TIP

You can make OpenShift Container Platform resources available outside of the cluster by assigning a floating IP address and updating your firewall configuration.

### 1.2.13.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses

You can install OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) without providing floating IP addresses.

In the `install-config.yaml` file, do not define the following parameters:

- `platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP`
- `platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP`

If you cannot provide an external network, you can also leave `platform.openstack.externalNetwork` blank. If you do not provide a value for `platform.openstack.externalNetwork`, a router is not created for you, and, without additional action, the installer will fail to retrieve an image from Glance. You must configure external connectivity on your own.

If you run the installer from a system that cannot reach the cluster API due to a lack of floating IP addresses or name resolution, installation fails. To prevent installation failure in these cases, you can use a proxy network or run the installer from a system that is on the same network as your machines.



#### NOTE

You can enable name resolution by creating DNS records for the API and Ingress ports. For example:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <api_port_IP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <ingress_port_IP>
```

If you do not control the DNS server, you can add the record to your `/etc/hosts` file. This action makes the API accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment but does allow installation for development and testing.

### 1.2.14. Deploying the cluster

You can install OpenShift Container Platform on a compatible cloud platform.



#### IMPORTANT

You can run the `create cluster` command of the installation program only once, during initial installation.

#### Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster.

#### Procedure

1. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and initialize the cluster deployment:

```
$ ./openshift-install create cluster --dir <installation_directory> \ 1
--log-level=info 2
```

- 1 For `<installation_directory>`, specify the location of your customized `./install-config.yaml` file.

- 2 To view different installation details, specify **warn**, **debug**, or **error** instead of **info**.



### NOTE

If the cloud provider account that you configured on your host does not have sufficient permissions to deploy the cluster, the installation process stops, and the missing permissions are displayed.

When the cluster deployment completes, directions for accessing your cluster, including a link to its web console and credentials for the **kubeadmin** user, display in your terminal.

### Example output

```
...
INFO Install complete!
INFO To access the cluster as the system:admin user when using 'oc', run 'export
KUBECONFIG=/home/myuser/install_dir/auth/kubeconfig'
INFO Access the OpenShift web-console here: https://console-openshift-
console.apps.mycluster.example.com
INFO Login to the console with user: "kubeadmin", and password: "4vYBz-Ee6gm-ymBZj-
Wt5AL"
INFO Time elapsed: 36m22s
```



### NOTE

The cluster access and credential information also outputs to **<installation\_directory>/openshift\_install.log** when an installation succeeds.



### IMPORTANT

- The Ignition config files that the installation program generates contain certificates that expire after 24 hours, which are then renewed at that time. If the cluster is shut down before renewing the certificates and the cluster is later restarted after the 24 hours have elapsed, the cluster automatically recovers the expired certificates. The exception is that you must manually approve the pending **node-bootstrapper** certificate signing requests (CSRs) to recover kubelet certificates. See the documentation for *Recovering from expired control plane certificates* for more information.
- It is recommended that you use Ignition config files within 12 hours after they are generated because the 24-hour certificate rotates from 16 to 22 hours after the cluster is installed. By using the Ignition config files within 12 hours, you can avoid installation failure if the certificate update runs during installation.



### IMPORTANT

You must not delete the installation program or the files that the installation program creates. Both are required to delete the cluster.

## 1.2.15. Verifying cluster status

You can verify your OpenShift Container Platform cluster's status during or after installation.

### Procedure

1. In the cluster environment, export the administrator's kubeconfig file:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server.

2. View the control plane and compute machines created after a deployment:

```
$ oc get nodes
```

3. View your cluster's version:

```
$ oc get clusterversion
```

4. View your Operators' status:

```
$ oc get clusteroperator
```

5. View all running pods in the cluster:

```
$ oc get pods -A
```

### 1.2.16. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI

You can log in to your cluster as a default system user by exporting the cluster **kubeconfig** file. The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server. The file is specific to a cluster and is created during OpenShift Container Platform installation.

#### Prerequisites

- You deployed an OpenShift Container Platform cluster.
- You installed the **oc** CLI.

### Procedure

1. Export the **kubeadmin** credentials:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

2. Verify you can run **oc** commands successfully using the exported configuration:

```
$ oc whoami
```

#### Example output

```
system:admin
```

#### Additional resources

- See [Accessing the web console](#) for more details about accessing and understanding the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

### 1.2.17. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, the Telemetry service, which runs by default to provide metrics about cluster health and the success of updates, requires internet access. If your cluster is connected to the internet, Telemetry runs automatically, and your cluster is registered to [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#).

After you confirm that your [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) inventory is correct, either maintained automatically by Telemetry or manually by using OpenShift Cluster Manager, [use subscription watch](#) to track your OpenShift Container Platform subscriptions at the account or multi-cluster level.

#### Additional resources

- See [About remote health monitoring](#) for more information about the Telemetry service

### 1.2.18. Next steps

- [Customize your cluster](#).
- If necessary, you can [opt out of remote health reporting](#).
- If you need to enable external access to node ports, [configure ingress cluster traffic by using a node port](#).
- If you did not configure RHOSP to accept application traffic over floating IP addresses, [configure RHOSP access with floating IP addresses](#).

## 1.3. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK ON YOUR OWN INFRASTRUCTURE

In OpenShift Container Platform version 4.6, you can install a cluster on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) that runs on user-provisioned infrastructure.

Using your own infrastructure allows you to integrate your cluster with existing infrastructure and modifications. The process requires more labor on your part than installer-provisioned installations, because you must create all RHOSP resources, like Nova servers, Neutron ports, and security groups. However, Red Hat provides Ansible playbooks to help you in the deployment process.

### 1.3.1. Prerequisites

- Review details about the [OpenShift Container Platform installation and update](#) processes.

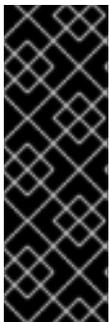
- Verify that OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 is compatible with your RHOSP version in the *Available platforms* section. You can also compare platform support across different versions by viewing the [OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP support matrix](#).
- Verify that your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.
- Have an RHOSP account where you want to install OpenShift Container Platform.
- On the machine from which you run the installation program, have:
  - A single directory in which you can keep the files you create during the installation process
  - Python 3

### 1.3.2. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, you require access to the Internet to install your cluster.

You must have Internet access to:

- Access [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) to download the installation program and perform subscription management. If the cluster has internet access and you do not disable Telemetry, that service automatically entitles your cluster.
- Access [Quay.io](#) to obtain the packages that are required to install your cluster.
- Obtain the packages that are required to perform cluster updates.



#### IMPORTANT

If your cluster cannot have direct Internet access, you can perform a restricted network installation on some types of infrastructure that you provision. During that process, you download the content that is required and use it to populate a mirror registry with the packages that you need to install a cluster and generate the installation program. With some installation types, the environment that you install your cluster in will not require Internet access. Before you update the cluster, you update the content of the mirror registry.

### 1.3.3. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP

To support an OpenShift Container Platform installation, your Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) quota must meet the following requirements:

**Table 1.13. Recommended resources for a default OpenShift Container Platform cluster on RHOSP**

Resource	Value
Floating IP addresses	3
Ports	15
Routers	1

Resource	Value
Subnets	1
RAM	112 GB
vCPUs	28
Volume storage	275 GB
Instances	7
Security groups	3
Security group rules	60

A cluster might function with fewer than recommended resources, but its performance is not guaranteed.



### IMPORTANT

If RHOSP object storage (Swift) is available and operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role, it is used as the default backend for the OpenShift Container Platform image registry. In this case, the volume storage requirement is 175 GB. Swift space requirements vary depending on the size of the image registry.



### NOTE

By default, your security group and security group rule quotas might be low. If you encounter problems, run **openstack quota set --secgroups 3 --secgroup-rules 60 <project>** as an administrator to increase them.

An OpenShift Container Platform deployment comprises control plane machines, compute machines, and a bootstrap machine.

#### 1.3.3.1. Control plane machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three control plane machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

#### 1.3.3.2. Compute machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three compute machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 8 GB memory, 2 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

## TIP

Compute machines host the applications that you run on OpenShift Container Platform; aim to run as many as you can.

### 1.3.3.3. Bootstrap machine

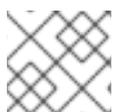
During installation, a bootstrap machine is temporarily provisioned to stand up the control plane. After the production control plane is ready, the bootstrap machine is deprovisioned.

The bootstrap machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

### 1.3.4. Downloading playbook dependencies

The Ansible playbooks that simplify the installation process on user-provisioned infrastructure require several Python modules. On the machine where you will run the installer, add the modules' repositories and then download them.



## NOTE

These instructions assume that you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 8.

## Prerequisites

- Python 3 is installed on your machine.

## Procedure

1. On a command line, add the repositories:

a. Register with Red Hat Subscription Manager:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager register # If not done already
```

b. Pull the latest subscription data:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager attach --pool=$YOUR_POOLID # If not done already
```

c. Disable the current repositories:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager repos --disable=* # If not done already
```

- d. Add the required repositories:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager repos \
--enable=rhel-8-for-x86_64-baseos-rpms \
--enable=openstack-16-tools-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms \
--enable=ansible-2.9-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms \
--enable=rhel-8-for-x86_64-appstream-rpms
```

2. Install the modules:

```
$ sudo yum install python3-openstackclient ansible python3-openstacksdk python3-netaddr
```

3. Ensure that the **python** command points to **python3**:

```
$ sudo alternatives --set python /usr/bin/python3
```

### 1.3.5. Downloading the installation playbooks

Download Ansible playbooks that you can use to install OpenShift Container Platform on your own Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) infrastructure.

#### Prerequisites

- The curl command-line tool is available on your machine.

#### Procedure

- To download the playbooks to your working directory, run the following script from a command line:

```
$ xargs -n 1 curl -O <<< '
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/bootstrap.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/common.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/compute-nodes.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/control-
plane.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/inventory.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/network.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/security-
groups.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
bootstrap.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
compute-nodes.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
control-plane.yaml
```

```

https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/download-balancers.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/download-network.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/download-security-groups.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/download-containers.yaml'

```

The playbooks are downloaded to your machine.



### IMPORTANT

During the installation process, you can modify the playbooks to configure your deployment.

Retain all playbooks for the life of your cluster. You must have the playbooks to remove your OpenShift Container Platform cluster from RHOSP.



### IMPORTANT

You must match any edits you make in the **bootstrap.yaml**, **compute-nodes.yaml**, **control-plane.yaml**, **network.yaml**, and **security-groups.yaml** files to the corresponding playbooks that are prefixed with **down-**. For example, edits to the **bootstrap.yaml** file must be reflected in the **down-bootstrap.yaml** file, too. If you do not edit both files, the supported cluster removal process will fail.

## 1.3.6. Obtaining the installation program

Before you install OpenShift Container Platform, download the installation file on a local computer.

### Prerequisites

- You have a computer that runs Linux or macOS, with 500 MB of local disk space

### Procedure

1. Access the [Infrastructure Provider](#) page on the OpenShift Cluster Manager site. If you have a Red Hat account, log in with your credentials. If you do not, create an account.
2. Select your infrastructure provider.
3. Navigate to the page for your installation type, download the installation program for your operating system, and place the file in the directory where you will store the installation configuration files.



### IMPORTANT

The installation program creates several files on the computer that you use to install your cluster. You must keep the installation program and the files that the installation program creates after you finish installing the cluster. Both files are required to delete the cluster.

**IMPORTANT**

Deleting the files created by the installation program does not remove your cluster, even if the cluster failed during installation. To remove your cluster, complete the OpenShift Container Platform uninstallation procedures for your specific cloud provider.

4. Extract the installation program. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ tar xvf openshift-install-linux.tar.gz
```

5. Download your installation [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) . This pull secret allows you to authenticate with the services that are provided by the included authorities, including Quay.io, which serves the container images for OpenShift Container Platform components.

### 1.3.7. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent

If you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery on your cluster, you must provide an SSH key to both your **ssh-agent** and the installation program. You can use this key to access the bootstrap machine in a public cluster to troubleshoot installation issues.

**NOTE**

In a production environment, you require disaster recovery and debugging.

You can use this key to SSH into the master nodes as the user **core**. When you deploy the cluster, the key is added to the **core** user's `~/.ssh/authorized_keys` list.

**NOTE**

You must use a local key, not one that you configured with platform-specific approaches such as [AWS key pairs](#).

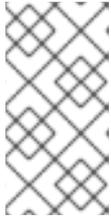
**Procedure**

1. If you do not have an SSH key that is configured for password-less authentication on your computer, create one. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ ssh-keygen -t ed25519 -N "" \
  -f <path>/<file_name> 1
```

- 1** Specify the path and file name, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`, of the new SSH key. If you have an existing key pair, ensure your public key is in the your `~/.ssh` directory.

Running this command generates an SSH key that does not require a password in the location that you specified.

**NOTE**

If you plan to install an OpenShift Container Platform cluster that uses FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries on the **x86\_64** architecture, do not create a key that uses the **ed25519** algorithm. Instead, create a key that uses the **rsa** or **ecdsa** algorithm.

2. Start the **ssh-agent** process as a background task:

```
$ eval "$(ssh-agent -s)"
```

**Example output**

```
Agent pid 31874
```

**NOTE**

If your cluster is in FIPS mode, only use FIPS-compliant algorithms to generate the SSH key. The key must be either RSA or ECDSA.

3. Add your SSH private key to the **ssh-agent**:

```
$ ssh-add <path>/<file_name> 1
```

**Example output**

```
Identity added: /home/<you>/<path>/<file_name> (<computer_name>)
```

- 1** Specify the path and file name for your SSH private key, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`

**Next steps**

- When you install OpenShift Container Platform, provide the SSH public key to the installation program.

**1.3.8. Creating the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image**

The OpenShift Container Platform installation program requires that a Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image be present in the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) cluster. Retrieve the latest RHCOS image, then upload it using the RHOSP CLI.

**Prerequisites**

- The RHOSP CLI is installed.

**Procedure**

1. Log in to the Red Hat Customer Portal's [Product Downloads page](#).
2. Under **Version**, select the most recent release of OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 for Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 8.

**IMPORTANT**

The RHCOS images might not change with every release of OpenShift Container Platform. You must download images with the highest version that is less than or equal to the OpenShift Container Platform version that you install. Use the image versions that match your OpenShift Container Platform version if they are available.

3. Download the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) - OpenStack Image (QCOW)* .
4. Decompress the image.

**NOTE**

You must decompress the RHOSP image before the cluster can use it. The name of the downloaded file might not contain a compression extension, like **.gz** or **.tgz**. To find out if or how the file is compressed, in a command line, enter:

```
$ file <name_of_downloaded_file>
```

5. From the image that you downloaded, create an image that is named **rhcos** in your cluster by using the RHOSP CLI:

```
$ openstack image create --container-format=bare --disk-format=qcow2 --file rhcos-
${RHCOS_VERSION}-openstack.qcow2 rhcos
```

**IMPORTANT**

Depending on your RHOSP environment, you might be able to upload the image in either **.raw** or **.qcow2** formats. If you use Ceph, you must use the **.raw** format.

**WARNING**

If the installation program finds multiple images with the same name, it chooses one of them at random. To avoid this behavior, create unique names for resources in RHOSP.

After you upload the image to RHOSP, it is usable in the installation process.

### 1.3.9. Verifying external network access

The OpenShift Container Platform installation process requires external network access. You must provide an external network value to it, or deployment fails. Before you begin the process, verify that a network with the external router type exists in Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

#### Prerequisites

- [Configure OpenStack's networking service to have DHCP agents forward instances' DNS queries](#)

## Procedure

1. Using the RHOSP CLI, verify the name and ID of the 'External' network:

```
$ openstack network list --long -c ID -c Name -c "Router Type"
```

## Example output

```
+-----+-----+-----+
| ID                | Name          | Router Type |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 148a8023-62a7-4672-b018-003462f8d7dc | public_network | External    |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

A network with an external router type appears in the network list. If at least one does not, see [Creating a default floating IP network](#) and [Creating a default provider network](#).



## NOTE

If the Neutron trunk service plug-in is enabled, a trunk port is created by default. For more information, see [Neutron trunk port](#).

## 1.3.10. Enabling access to the environment

At deployment, all OpenShift Container Platform machines are created in a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP)-tenant network. Therefore, they are not accessible directly in most RHOSP deployments.

You can configure OpenShift Container Platform API and application access by using floating IP addresses (FIPs) during installation. You can also complete an installation without configuring FIPs, but the installer will not configure a way to reach the API or applications externally.

### 1.3.10.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses

Create floating IP (FIP) addresses for external access to the OpenShift Container Platform API, cluster applications, and the bootstrap process.

## Procedure

1. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the API FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "API <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"
<external_network>
```

2. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the apps, or Ingress, FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "Ingress <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"
<external_network>
```

3. By using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the bootstrap FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "bootstrap machine" <external_network>
```

4. Add records that follow these patterns to your DNS server for the API and Ingress FIPs:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <API_FIP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <apps_FIP>
```

## NOTE

If you do not control the DNS server, you can access the cluster by adding the cluster domain names such as the following to your `/etc/hosts` file:

- `<api_floating_ip> api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> grafana-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> prometheus-k8s-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> oauth-openshift.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> console-openshift-console.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `application_floating_ip integrated-oauth-server-openshift-authentication.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`

The cluster domain names in the `/etc/hosts` file grant access to the web console and the monitoring interface of your cluster locally. You can also use the `kubectl` or `oc`. You can access the user applications by using the additional entries pointing to the `<application_floating_ip>`. This action makes the API and applications accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment, but does allow installation for development and testing.

5. Add the FIPs to the `inventory.yaml` file as the values of the following variables:

- `os_api_fip`
- `os_bootstrap_fip`
- `os_ingress_fip`

If you use these values, you must also enter an external network as the value of the `os_external_network` variable in the `inventory.yaml` file.

## TIP

You can make OpenShift Container Platform resources available outside of the cluster by assigning a floating IP address and updating your firewall configuration.

### 1.3.10.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses

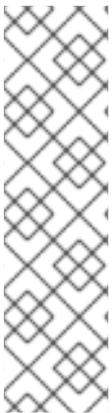
You can install OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) without providing floating IP addresses.

In the **inventory.yaml** file, do not define the following variables:

- **os\_api\_fip**
- **os\_bootstrap\_fip**
- **os\_ingress\_fip**

If you cannot provide an external network, you can also leave **os\_external\_network** blank. If you do not provide a value for **os\_external\_network**, a router is not created for you, and, without additional action, the installer will fail to retrieve an image from Glance. Later in the installation process, when you create network resources, you must configure external connectivity on your own.

If you run the installer with the **wait-for** command from a system that cannot reach the cluster API due to a lack of floating IP addresses or name resolution, installation fails. To prevent installation failure in these cases, you can use a proxy network or run the installer from a system that is on the same network as your machines.



## NOTE

You can enable name resolution by creating DNS records for the API and Ingress ports. For example:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <api_port_IP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <ingress_port_IP>
```

If you do not control the DNS server, you can add the record to your **/etc/hosts** file. This action makes the API accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment but does allow installation for development and testing.

### 1.3.11. Defining parameters for the installation program

The OpenShift Container Platform installation program relies on a file that is called **clouds.yaml**. The file describes Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters, including the project name, log in information, and authorization service URLs.

#### Procedure

1. Create the **clouds.yaml** file:
  - If your RHOSP distribution includes the Horizon web UI, generate a **clouds.yaml** file in it.



## IMPORTANT

Remember to add a password to the **auth** field. You can also keep secrets in [a separate file](#) from **clouds.yaml**.

- If your RHOSP distribution does not include the Horizon web UI, or you do not want to use Horizon, create the file yourself. For detailed information about **clouds.yaml**, see [Config files](#) in the RHOSP documentation.

```
clouds:
```

```

shiftstack:
  auth:
    auth_url: http://10.10.14.42:5000/v3
    project_name: shiftstack
    username: shiftstack_user
    password: XXX
    user_domain_name: Default
    project_domain_name: Default
dev-env:
  region_name: RegionOne
  auth:
    username: 'devuser'
    password: XXX
    project_name: 'devonly'
    auth_url: 'https://10.10.14.22:5001/v2.0'

```

2. If your RHOSP installation uses self-signed certificate authority (CA) certificates for endpoint authentication:

- a. Copy the certificate authority file to your machine.
- b. Add the machine to the certificate authority trust bundle:

```
$ sudo cp ca.crt.pem /etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/
```

- c. Update the trust bundle:

```
$ sudo update-ca-trust extract
```

- d. Add the **cacerts** key to the **clouds.yaml** file. The value must be an absolute, non-root-accessible path to the CA certificate:

```

clouds:
  shiftstack:
  ...
  cacert: "/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca.crt.pem"

```

## TIP

After you run the installer with a custom CA certificate, you can update the certificate by editing the value of the **ca-cert.pem** key in the **cloud-provider-config** keymap. On a command line, run:

```
$ oc edit configmap -n openshift-config cloud-provider-config
```

3. Place the **clouds.yaml** file in one of the following locations:
  - a. The value of the **OS\_CLIENT\_CONFIG\_FILE** environment variable
  - b. The current directory
  - c. A Unix-specific user configuration directory, for example **~/.config/openstack/clouds.yaml**
  - d. A Unix-specific site configuration directory, for example **/etc/openstack/clouds.yaml**

The installation program searches for **clouds.yaml** in that order.

### 1.3.12. Creating the installation configuration file

You can customize the OpenShift Container Platform cluster you install on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

#### Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster.

#### Procedure

1. Create the **install-config.yaml** file.
  - a. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and run the following command:

```
$ ./openshift-install create install-config --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the directory name to store the files that the installation program creates.



#### IMPORTANT

Specify an empty directory. Some installation assets, like bootstrap X.509 certificates have short expiration intervals, so you must not reuse an installation directory. If you want to reuse individual files from another cluster installation, you can copy them into your directory. However, the file names for the installation assets might change between releases. Use caution when copying installation files from an earlier OpenShift Container Platform version.

- b. At the prompts, provide the configuration details for your cloud:
  - i. Optional: Select an SSH key to use to access your cluster machines.



#### NOTE

For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your **ssh-agent** process uses.

- ii. Select **openstack** as the platform to target.
- iii. Specify the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) external network name to use for installing the cluster.
- iv. Specify the floating IP address to use for external access to the OpenShift API.
- v. Specify a RHOSP flavor with at least 16 GB RAM to use for control plane and compute nodes.

- vi. Select the base domain to deploy the cluster to. All DNS records will be sub-domains of this base and will also include the cluster name.
  - vii. Enter a name for your cluster. The name must be 14 or fewer characters long.
  - viii. Paste the [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) .
2. Modify the **install-config.yaml** file. You can find more information about the available parameters in the **Installation configuration parameters** section.
  3. Back up the **install-config.yaml** file so that you can use it to install multiple clusters.



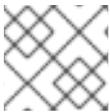
### IMPORTANT

The **install-config.yaml** file is consumed during the installation process. If you want to reuse the file, you must back it up now.

You now have the file **install-config.yaml** in the directory that you specified.

### 1.3.13. Installation configuration parameters

Before you deploy an OpenShift Container Platform cluster, you provide parameter values to describe your account on the cloud platform that hosts your cluster and optionally customize your cluster's platform. When you create the **install-config.yaml** installation configuration file, you provide values for the required parameters through the command line. If you customize your cluster, you can modify the **install-config.yaml** file to provide more details about the platform.



### NOTE

After installation, you cannot modify these parameters in the **install-config.yaml** file.



### IMPORTANT

The **openshift-install** command does not validate field names for parameters. If an incorrect name is specified, the related file or object is not created, and no error is reported. Ensure that the field names for any parameters that are specified are correct.

#### 1.3.13.1. Required configuration parameters

Required installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.14. Required parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>apiVersion</b>	The API version for the <b>install-config.yaml</b> content. The current version is <b>v1</b> . The installer may also support older API versions.	String

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>baseDomain</b>	The base domain of your cloud provider. The base domain is used to create routes to your OpenShift Container Platform cluster components. The full DNS name for your cluster is a combination of the <b>baseDomain</b> and <b>metadata.name</b> parameter values that uses the <b>&lt;metadata.name&gt;.&lt;baseDomain&gt;</b> format.	A fully-qualified domain or subdomain name, such as <b>example.com</b> .
<b>metadata</b>	Kubernetes resource <b>ObjectMeta</b> , from which only the <b>name</b> parameter is consumed.	Object
<b>metadata.name</b>	The name of the cluster. DNS records for the cluster are all subdomains of <b>{{.metadata.name}}</b> . <b>{{.baseDomain}}</b> .	String of lowercase letters, hyphens (-), and periods (.), such as <b>dev</b> . The string must be 14 characters or fewer long.
<b>platform</b>	The configuration for the specific platform upon which to perform the installation: <b>aws, baremetal, azure, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> . For additional information about <b>platform.&lt;platform&gt;</b> parameters, consult the following table for your specific platform.	Object
<b>pullSecret</b>	Get a <a href="#">pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager</a> to authenticate downloading container images for OpenShift Container Platform components from services such as Quay.io.	<pre> {   "auths":{     "cloud.openshift.com":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     },     "quay.io":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     }   } } </pre>

### 1.3.13.2. Network configuration parameters

You can customize your installation configuration based on the requirements of your existing network infrastructure. For example, you can expand the IP address block for the cluster network or provide different IP address blocks than the defaults.

Only IPv4 addresses are supported.

Table 1.15. Network parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking</b>	The configuration for the cluster network.	Object   <b>NOTE</b> You cannot modify parameters specified by the <b>networking</b> object after installation.
<b>networking.network Type</b>	The cluster network provider Container Network Interface (CNI) plug-in to install.	Either <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> or <b>OVNKubernetes</b> . The default value is <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for pods.  The default value is <b>10.128.0.0/14</b> with a host prefix of <b>/23</b> .  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   clusterNetwork:     - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14       hostPrefix: 23</pre>
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.clusterNetwork</b> . An IP address block.  An IPv4 network.	An IP address block in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) notation. The prefix length for an IPv4 block is between <b>0</b> and <b>32</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.hostPrefix</b>	The subnet prefix length to assign to each individual node. For example, if <b>hostPrefix</b> is set to <b>23</b> then each node is assigned a <b>/23</b> subnet out of the given <b>cidr</b> . A <b>hostPrefix</b> value of <b>23</b> provides 510 ( $2^{(32 - 23)} - 2$ ) pod IP addresses.	A subnet prefix.  The default value is <b>23</b> .

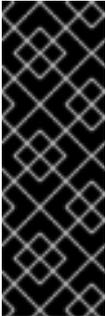
Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking.serviceNetwork</b>	<p>The IP address block for services. The default value is <b>172.30.0.0/16</b>.</p> <p>The OpenShift SDN and OVN-Kubernetes network providers support only a single IP address block for the service network.</p>	<p>An array with an IP address block in CIDR format. For example:</p> <pre>networking:   serviceNetwork:     - 172.30.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork</b>	<p>The IP address blocks for machines.</p> <p>If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.</p>	<p>An array of objects. For example:</p> <pre>networking:   machineNetwork:     - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork.cidr</b>	<p>Required if you use <b>networking.machineNetwork</b>. An IP address block. The default value is <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> for all platforms other than libvirt. For libvirt, the default value is <b>192.168.126.0/24</b>.</p>	<p>An IP network block in CIDR notation.</p> <p>For example, <b>10.0.0.0/16</b>.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Set the <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> to match the CIDR that the preferred NIC resides in.</p> </div> </div>

### 1.3.13.3. Optional configuration parameters

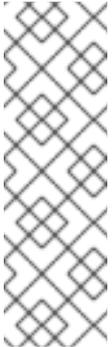
Optional installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.16. Optional parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>additionalTrustBundle</b>	<p>A PEM-encoded X.509 certificate bundle that is added to the nodes' trusted certificate store. This trust bundle may also be used when a proxy has been configured.</p>	String
<b>compute</b>	<p>The configuration for the machines that comprise the compute nodes.</p>	<p>Array of machine-pool objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.</p>

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>compute.hyperthreading</b>	Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b> , on compute machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.   <b>IMPORTANT</b>  If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>compute.name</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>worker</b>
<b>compute.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider to host the worker machines. This parameter value must match the <b>controlPlane.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> , or <b>{}</b>
<b>compute.replicas</b>	The number of compute machines, which are also known as worker machines, to provision.	A positive integer greater than or equal to <b>2</b> . The default value is <b>3</b> .
<b>controlPlane</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the control plane.	Array of <b>MachinePool</b> objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>controlPlane.hyperthreading</b>	Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b> , on control plane machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.   <b>IMPORTANT</b>  If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>controlPlane.name</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>master</b>
<b>controlPlane.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider that hosts the control plane machines. This parameter value must match the <b>compute.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> , or <b>{}</b>
<b>controlPlane.replicas</b>	The number of control plane machines to provision.	The only supported value is <b>3</b> , which is the default value.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>credentialsMode</b>	<p>The Cloud Credential Operator (CCO) mode. If no mode is specified, the CCO dynamically tries to determine the capabilities of the provided credentials, with a preference for mint mode on the platforms where multiple modes are supported.</p>  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Not all CCO modes are supported for all cloud providers. For more information on CCO modes, see the <i>Cloud Credential Operator</i> entry in the <i>Red Hat Operators reference content</i>.</p>	<b>Mint, Passthrough, Manual</b> , or an empty string ("").
<b>fips</b>	<p>Enable or disable FIPS mode. The default is <b>false</b> (disabled). If FIPS mode is enabled, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) machines that OpenShift Container Platform runs on bypass the default Kubernetes cryptography suite and use the cryptography modules that are provided with RHCOS instead.</p>  <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>The use of FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries is only supported on OpenShift Container Platform deployments on the <b>x86_64</b> architecture.</p>  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>If you are using Azure File storage, you cannot enable FIPS mode.</p>	<b>false</b> or <b>true</b>
<b>imageContentSources</b>	Sources and repositories for the release-image content.	Array of objects. Includes a <b>source</b> and, optionally, <b>mirrors</b> , as described in the following rows of this table.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>imageContentSources.source</b>	Required if you use <b>imageContentSources</b> . Specify the repository that users refer to, for example, in image pull specifications.	String
<b>imageContentSources.mirrors</b>	Specify one or more repositories that may also contain the same images.	Array of strings
<b>publish</b>	How to publish or expose the user-facing endpoints of your cluster, such as the Kubernetes API, OpenShift routes.	<p><b>Internal</b> or <b>External</b>. The default value is <b>External</b>.</p> <p>Setting this field to <b>Internal</b> is not supported on non-cloud platforms.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If the value of the field is set to <b>Internal</b>, the cluster will become non-functional. For more information, refer to <a href="#">BZ#1953035</a>.</p> </div> </div>
<b>sshKey</b>	<p>The SSH key or keys to authenticate access your cluster machines.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your <b>ssh-agent</b> process uses.</p> </div> </div>	<p>One or more keys. For example:</p> <pre>sshKey:   &lt;key1&gt;   &lt;key2&gt;   &lt;key3&gt;</pre>

#### 1.3.13.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters

Additional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.17. Additional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For compute machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For compute machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For control plane machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For control plane machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.cloud</b>	The name of the RHOSP cloud to use from the list of clouds in the <b>clouds.yaml</b> file.	String, for example <b>MyCloud</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b>	The RHOSP external network name to be used for installation.	String, for example <b>external</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.computeFlavor</b>	The RHOSP flavor to use for control plane and compute machines.	String, for example <b>m1.xlarge</b> .

### 1.3.13.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters

Optional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.18. Optional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIds</b>	Additional networks that are associated with compute machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with compute machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with control plane machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with control plane machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <code>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</code> .
<b>platform.openstack.clusterOSImage</b>	<p>The location from which the installer downloads the RHCOS image.</p> <p>You must set this parameter to perform an installation in a restricted network.</p>	<p>An HTTP or HTTPS URL, optionally with an SHA-256 checksum.</p> <p>For example, <code>http://mirror.example.com/images/rhcos-43.81.201912131630.0-openstack.x86_64.qcow2.gz?sha256=ffebbd68e8a1f2a245ca19522c16c86f67f9ac8e4e0c1f0a812b068b16f7265d</code>. The value can also be the name of an existing Glance image, for example <code>my-rhcos</code>.</p>
<b>platform.openstack.defaultMachinePlatform</b>	The default machine pool platform configuration.	<pre>{   "type": "ml.large",   "rootVolume": {     "size": 30,     "type": "performance"   } }</pre>
<b>platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP</b>	<p>An existing floating IP address to associate with the Ingress port. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.</p>	An IP address, for example <code>128.0.0.1</code> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.lbfloatingIP</b>	An existing floating IP address to associate with the API load balancer. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalDNS</b>	IP addresses for external DNS servers that cluster instances use for DNS resolution.	A list of IP addresses as strings. For example, <b>["8.8.8.8", "192.168.1.12"]</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.machinesSubnet</b>	<p>The UUID of a RHOSP subnet that the cluster's nodes use. Nodes and virtual IP (VIP) ports are created on this subnet.</p> <p>The first item in <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> must match the value of <b>machinesSubnet</b>.</p> <p>If you deploy to a custom subnet, you cannot specify an external DNS server to the OpenShift Container Platform installer. Instead, <a href="#">add DNS to the subnet in RHOSP</a>.</p>	A UUID as a string. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .

### 1.3.13.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments

Optionally, you can deploy a cluster on a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) subnet of your choice. The subnet's GUID is passed as the value of **platform.openstack.machinesSubnet** in the **install-config.yaml** file.

This subnet is used as the cluster's primary subnet; nodes and ports are created on it.

Before you run the OpenShift Container Platform installer with a custom subnet, verify that:

- The target network and subnet are available.
- DHCP is enabled on the target subnet.
- You can provide installer credentials that have permission to create ports on the target network.
- If your network configuration requires a router, it is created in RHOSP. Some configurations rely on routers for floating IP address translation.

- Your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.



## NOTE

By default, the API VIP takes x.x.x.5 and the Ingress VIP takes x.x.x.7 from your network's CIDR block. To override these default values, set values for **platform.openstack.apiVIP** and **platform.openstack.ingressVIP** that are outside of the DHCP allocation pool.

### 1.3.13.7. Sample customized `install-config.yaml` file for RHOSP

This sample **install-config.yaml** demonstrates all of the possible Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) customization options.



## IMPORTANT

This sample file is provided for reference only. You must obtain your **install-config.yaml** file by using the installation program.

```
apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: example.com
clusterID: os-test
controlPlane:
  name: master
  platform: {}
  replicas: 3
compute:
- name: worker
  platform:
    openstack:
      type: m1.large
      replicas: 3
metadata:
  name: example
networking:
  clusterNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14
    hostPrefix: 23
  machineNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16
  serviceNetwork:
  - 172.30.0.0/16
  networkType: OpenShiftSDN
platform:
  openstack:
    cloud: mycloud
    externalNetwork: external
    computeFlavor: m1.xlarge
    lbFloatingIP: 128.0.0.1
fips: false
pullSecret: '{"auths": ...}'
sshKey: ssh-ed25519 AAAA...
```

### 1.3.13.8. Setting a custom subnet for machines

The IP range that the installation program uses by default might not match the Neutron subnet that you create when you install OpenShift Container Platform. If necessary, update the CIDR value for new machines by editing the installation configuration file.

#### Prerequisites

- You have the **install-config.yaml** file that was generated by the OpenShift Container Platform installation program.

#### Procedure

1. On a command line, browse to the directory that contains **install-config.yaml**.
2. From that directory, either run a script to edit the **install-config.yaml** file or update the file manually:
  - To set the value by using a script, run:

```
$ python -c '
import yaml;
path = "install-config.yaml";
data = yaml.safe_load(open(path));
data["networking"]["machineNetwork"] = [{"cidr": "192.168.0.0/18"}]; 1
open(path, "w").write(yaml.dump(data, default_flow_style=False))'
```

- 1 Insert a value that matches your intended Neutron subnet, e.g. **192.0.2.0/24**.

- To set the value manually, open the file and set the value of **networking.machineCIDR** to something that matches your intended Neutron subnet.

### 1.3.13.9. Emptying compute machine pools

To proceed with an installation that uses your own infrastructure, set the number of compute machines in the installation configuration file to zero. Later, you create these machines manually.

#### Prerequisites

- You have the **install-config.yaml** file that was generated by the OpenShift Container Platform installation program.

#### Procedure

1. On a command line, browse to the directory that contains **install-config.yaml**.
2. From that directory, either run a script to edit the **install-config.yaml** file or update the file manually:
  - To set the value by using a script, run:

```
$ python -c '
import yaml;
path = "install-config.yaml";
```

```
data = yaml.safe_load(open(path));
data["compute"][0]["replicas"] = 0;
open(path, "w").write(yaml.dump(data, default_flow_style=False))'
```

- To set the value manually, open the file and set the value of **compute.<first entry>.replicas** to **0**.

### 1.3.14. Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files

Because you must modify some cluster definition files and manually start the cluster machines, you must generate the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files that the cluster needs to make its machines.

The installation configuration file transforms into the Kubernetes manifests. The manifests wrap into the Ignition configuration files, which are later used to create the cluster.



#### IMPORTANT

- The Ignition config files that the installation program generates contain certificates that expire after 24 hours, which are then renewed at that time. If the cluster is shut down before renewing the certificates and the cluster is later restarted after the 24 hours have elapsed, the cluster automatically recovers the expired certificates. The exception is that you must manually approve the pending **node-bootstrapper** certificate signing requests (CSRs) to recover kubelet certificates. See the documentation for *Recovering from expired control plane certificates* for more information.
- It is recommended that you use Ignition config files within 12 hours after they are generated because the 24-hour certificate rotates from 16 to 22 hours after the cluster is installed. By using the Ignition config files within 12 hours, you can avoid installation failure if the certificate update runs during installation.

#### Prerequisites

- You obtained the OpenShift Container Platform installation program.
- You created the **install-config.yaml** installation configuration file.

#### Procedure

1. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and generate the Kubernetes manifests for the cluster:

```
$ ./openshift-install create manifests --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1 For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the installation directory that contains the **install-config.yaml** file you created.

2. Remove the Kubernetes manifest files that define the control plane machines and compute machine sets:

```
$ rm -f openshift/99_openshift-cluster-api_master-machines-*.yaml openshift/99_openshift-cluster-api_worker-machineset-*.yaml
```

Because you create and manage these resources yourself, you do not have to initialize them.

- You can preserve the machine set files to create compute machines by using the machine API, but you must update references to them to match your environment.
3. Check that the **mastersSchedulable** parameter in the `<installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-scheduler-02-config.yml` Kubernetes manifest file is set to **false**. This setting prevents pods from being scheduled on the control plane machines:
    - a. Open the `<installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-scheduler-02-config.yml` file.
    - b. Locate the **mastersSchedulable** parameter and ensure that it is set to **false**.
    - c. Save and exit the file.
  4. To create the Ignition configuration files, run the following command from the directory that contains the installation program:

```
$ ./openshift-install create ignition-configs --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1** For `<installation_directory>`, specify the same installation directory.

The following files are generated in the directory:

```
.
├── auth
│   ├── kubeadmin-password
│   └── kubeconfig
├── bootstrap.ign
├── master.ign
├── metadata.json
└── worker.ign
```

5. Export the metadata file's **infraID** key as an environment variable:

```
$ export INFRA_ID=$(jq -r .infraID metadata.json)
```

## TIP

Extract the **infraID** key from **metadata.json** and use it as a prefix for all of the RHOSP resources that you create. By doing so, you avoid name conflicts when making multiple deployments in the same project.

### 1.3.15. Preparing the bootstrap Ignition files

The OpenShift Container Platform installation process relies on bootstrap machines that are created from a bootstrap Ignition configuration file.

Edit the file and upload it. Then, create a secondary bootstrap Ignition configuration file that Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) uses to download the primary file.

## Prerequisites

- You have the bootstrap Ignition file that the installer program generates, **bootstrap.ign**.
- The infrastructure ID from the installer's metadata file is set as an environment variable (**\$INFRA\_ID**).
  - If the variable is not set, see **Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files**
- You have an HTTP(S)-accessible way to store the bootstrap Ignition file.
  - The documented procedure uses the RHOSP image service (Glance), but you can also use the RHOSP storage service (Swift), Amazon S3, an internal HTTP server, or an ad hoc Nova server.

## Procedure

1. Run the following Python script. The script modifies the bootstrap Ignition file to set the hostname and, if available, CA certificate file when it runs:

```
import base64
import json
import os

with open('bootstrap.ign', 'r') as f:
    ignition = json.load(f)

files = ignition['storage'].get('files', [])

infra_id = os.environ.get('INFRA_ID', 'openshift').encode()
hostname_b64 = base64.standard_b64encode(infra_id + b'-bootstrap\n').decode().strip()
files.append(
{
    'path': '/etc/hostname',
    'mode': 420,
    'contents': {
        'source': 'data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,' + hostname_b64
    }
})

ca_cert_path = os.environ.get('OS_CACERT', "")
if ca_cert_path:
    with open(ca_cert_path, 'r') as f:
        ca_cert = f.read().encode()
        ca_cert_b64 = base64.standard_b64encode(ca_cert).decode().strip()

files.append(
{
    'path': '/opt/openshift/tls/cloud-ca-cert.pem',
    'mode': 420,
    'contents': {
        'source': 'data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,' + ca_cert_b64
    }
})

ignition['storage']['files'] = files;
```

```
with open('bootstrap.ign', 'w') as f:
    json.dump(ignition, f)
```

- Using the RHOSP CLI, create an image that uses the bootstrap Ignition file:

```
$ openstack image create --disk-format=raw --container-format=bare --file bootstrap.ign
<image_name>
```

- Get the image's details:

```
$ openstack image show <image_name>
```

Make a note of the **file** value; it follows the pattern **v2/images/<image\_ID>/file**.



#### NOTE

Verify that the image you created is active.

- Retrieve the image service's public address:

```
$ openstack catalog show image
```

- Combine the public address with the image **file** value and save the result as the storage location. The location follows the pattern **<image\_service\_public\_URL>/v2/images/<image\_ID>/file**.

- Generate an auth token and save the token ID:

```
$ openstack token issue -c id -f value
```

- Insert the following content into a file called **\$INFRA\_ID-bootstrap-ignition.json** and edit the placeholders to match your own values:

```
{
  "ignition": {
    "config": {
      "merge": [{
        "source": "<storage_url>", 1
        "httpHeaders": [{
          "name": "X-Auth-Token", 2
          "value": "<token_ID>" 3
        }]
      }]
    },
    "security": {
      "tls": {
        "certificateAuthorities": [{
          "source": "data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,<base64_encoded_certificate>" 4
        }]
      }
    }
  },
}
```

```

"version": "3.1.0"
}
}

```

- 1 Replace the value of **ignition.config.merge.source** with the bootstrap Ignition file storage URL.
- 2 Set **name** in **httpHeaders** to **"X-Auth-Token"**.
- 3 Set **value** in **httpHeaders** to your token's ID.
- 4 If the bootstrap Ignition file server uses a self-signed certificate, include the base64-encoded certificate.

8. Save the secondary Ignition config file.

The bootstrap Ignition data will be passed to RHOSP during installation.



### WARNING

The bootstrap Ignition file contains sensitive information, like **clouds.yaml** credentials. Ensure that you store it in a secure place, and delete it after you complete the installation process.

## 1.3.16. Creating control plane Ignition config files on RHOSP

Installing OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) on your own infrastructure requires control plane Ignition config files. You must create multiple config files.



### NOTE

As with the bootstrap Ignition configuration, you must explicitly define a hostname for each control plane machine.

### Prerequisites

- The infrastructure ID from the installation program's metadata file is set as an environment variable (**\$INFRA\_ID**).
  - If the variable is not set, see "Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files."

### Procedure

- On a command line, run the following Python script:

```

$ for index in $(seq 0 2); do
  MASTER_HOSTNAME="$INFRA_ID-master-$index\n"
  python -c "import base64, json, sys;
ignition = json.load(sys.stdin);
storage = ignition.get('storage', {});

```

```

files = storage.get('files', []);
files.append({'path': '/etc/hostname', 'mode': 420, 'contents': {'source':
'data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,' +
base64.standard_b64encode(b'$MASTER_HOSTNAME').decode().strip(), 'verification': {}},
'filesystem': 'root'});
storage['files'] = files;
ignition['storage'] = storage
json.dump(ignition, sys.stdout) <master.ign >"$INFRA_ID-master-$index-ignition.json"
done

```

You now have three control plane Ignition files: **<INFRA\_ID>-master-0-ignition.json**, **<INFRA\_ID>-master-1-ignition.json**, and **<INFRA\_ID>-master-2-ignition.json**.

### 1.3.17. Creating network resources on RHOSP

Create the network resources that an OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) installation on your own infrastructure requires. To save time, run supplied Ansible playbooks that generate security groups, networks, subnets, routers, and ports.

#### Prerequisites

- Python 3 is installed on your machine.
- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."

#### Procedure

1. Optional: Add an external network value to the **inventory.yaml** playbook:

#### Example external network value in the **inventory.yaml** Ansible playbook

```

...
# The public network providing connectivity to the cluster. If not
# provided, the cluster external connectivity must be provided in another
# way.

# Required for os_api_fip, os_ingress_fip, os_bootstrap_fip.
os_external_network: 'external'
...

```



#### IMPORTANT

If you did not provide a value for **os\_external\_network** in the **inventory.yaml** file, you must ensure that VMs can access Glance and an external connection yourself.

2. Optional: Add external network and floating IP (FIP) address values to the **inventory.yaml** playbook:

#### Example FIP values in the **inventory.yaml** Ansible playbook

```

...

```

```

# OpenShift API floating IP address. If this value is non-empty, the
# corresponding floating IP will be attached to the Control Plane to
# serve the OpenShift API.
os_api_fip: '203.0.113.23'

# OpenShift Ingress floating IP address. If this value is non-empty, the
# corresponding floating IP will be attached to the worker nodes to serve
# the applications.
os_ingress_fip: '203.0.113.19'

# If this value is non-empty, the corresponding floating IP will be
# attached to the bootstrap machine. This is needed for collecting logs
# in case of install failure.
os_bootstrap_fip: '203.0.113.20'

```



### IMPORTANT

If you do not define values for **os\_api\_fip** and **os\_ingress\_fip**, you must perform post-installation network configuration.

If you do not define a value for **os\_bootstrap\_fip**, the installer cannot download debugging information from failed installations.

See "Enabling access to the environment" for more information.

3. On a command line, create security groups by running the **security-groups.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml security-groups.yaml
```

4. On a command line, create a network, subnet, and router by running the **network.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml network.yaml
```

5. Optional: If you want to control the default resolvers that Nova servers use, run the RHOSP CLI command:

```
$ openstack subnet set --dns-nameserver <server_1> --dns-nameserver <server_2>
"$INFRA_ID-nodes"
```

### 1.3.18. Creating the bootstrap machine on RHOSP

Create a bootstrap machine and give it the network access it needs to run on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP). Red Hat provides an Ansible playbook that you run to simplify this process.

#### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **bootstrap.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.

- The **metadata.json** file that the installation program created is in the same directory as the Ansible playbooks.

### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. On a command line, run the **bootstrap.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml bootstrap.yaml
```

3. After the bootstrap server is active, view the logs to verify that the Ignition files were received:

```
$ openstack console log show "$INFRA_ID-bootstrap"
```

### 1.3.19. Creating the control plane machines on RHOSP

Create three control plane machines by using the Ignition config files that you generated. Red Hat provides an Ansible playbook that you run to simplify this process.

#### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The infrastructure ID from the installation program's metadata file is set as an environment variable (**\$INFRA\_ID**).
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **control-plane.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.
- You have the three Ignition files that were created in "Creating control plane Ignition config files."

#### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. If the control plane Ignition config files aren't already in your working directory, copy them into it.
3. On a command line, run the **control-plane.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml control-plane.yaml
```

4. Run the following command to monitor the bootstrapping process:

```
$ openshift-install wait-for bootstrap-complete
```

You will see messages that confirm that the control plane machines are running and have joined the cluster:

```
INFO API v1.14.6+f9b5405 up
```

```
INFO Waiting up to 30m0s for bootstrapping to complete...
```

```
...
```

```
INFO It is now safe to remove the bootstrap resources
```

### 1.3.20. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI

You can log in to your cluster as a default system user by exporting the cluster **kubeconfig** file. The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server. The file is specific to a cluster and is created during OpenShift Container Platform installation.

#### Prerequisites

- You deployed an OpenShift Container Platform cluster.
- You installed the **oc** CLI.

#### Procedure

1. Export the **kubeadmin** credentials:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

2. Verify you can run **oc** commands successfully using the exported configuration:

```
$ oc whoami
```

#### Example output

```
system:admin
```

### 1.3.21. Deleting bootstrap resources from RHOSP

Delete the bootstrap resources that you no longer need.

#### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **down-bootstrap.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.
- The control plane machines are running.
  - If you do not know the status of the machines, see "Verifying cluster status."

#### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. On a command line, run the **down-bootstrap.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml down-bootstrap.yaml
```

The bootstrap port, server, and floating IP address are deleted.



#### WARNING

If you did not disable the bootstrap Ignition file URL earlier, do so now.

### 1.3.22. Creating compute machines on RHOSP

After standing up the control plane, create compute machines. Red Hat provides an Ansible playbook that you run to simplify this process.

#### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **compute-nodes.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.
- The **metadata.json** file that the installation program created is in the same directory as the Ansible playbooks.
- The control plane is active.

#### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. On a command line, run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml compute-nodes.yaml
```

#### Next steps

- Approve the certificate signing requests for the machines.

### 1.3.23. Approving the certificate signing requests for your machines

When you add machines to a cluster, two pending certificate signing requests (CSRs) are generated for each machine that you added. You must confirm that these CSRs are approved or, if necessary, approve them yourself. The client requests must be approved first, followed by the server requests.

#### Prerequisites

## Prerequisites

- You added machines to your cluster.

## Procedure

- Confirm that the cluster recognizes the machines:

```
$ oc get nodes
```

### Example output

```
NAME      STATUS    ROLES    AGE   VERSION
master-0  Ready    master   63m   v1.19.0
master-1  Ready    master   63m   v1.19.0
master-2  Ready    master   64m   v1.19.0
```

The output lists all of the machines that you created.



### NOTE

The preceding output might not include the compute nodes, also known as worker nodes, until some CSRs are approved.

- Review the pending CSRs and ensure that you see the client requests with the **Pending** or **Approved** status for each machine that you added to the cluster:

```
$ oc get csr
```

### Example output

```
NAME      AGE   REQUESTOR                                     CONDITION
csr-8b2br  15m   system:serviceaccount:openshift-machine-config-operator:node-
bootstrapper  Pending
csr-8vnps  15m   system:serviceaccount:openshift-machine-config-operator:node-
bootstrapper  Pending
...
```

In this example, two machines are joining the cluster. You might see more approved CSRs in the list.

- If the CSRs were not approved, after all of the pending CSRs for the machines you added are in **Pending** status, approve the CSRs for your cluster machines:

**NOTE**

Because the CSRs rotate automatically, approve your CSRs within an hour of adding the machines to the cluster. If you do not approve them within an hour, the certificates will rotate, and more than two certificates will be present for each node. You must approve all of these certificates. Once the client CSR is approved, the Kubelet creates a secondary CSR for the serving certificate, which requires manual approval. Then, subsequent serving certificate renewal requests are automatically approved by the **machine-approver** if the Kubelet requests a new certificate with identical parameters.

**NOTE**

For clusters running on platforms that are not machine API enabled, such as bare metal and other user-provisioned infrastructure, you must implement a method of automatically approving the kubelet serving certificate requests (CSRs). If a request is not approved, then the **oc exec**, **oc rsh**, and **oc logs** commands cannot succeed, because a serving certificate is required when the API server connects to the kubelet. Any operation that contacts the Kubelet endpoint requires this certificate approval to be in place. The method must watch for new CSRs, confirm that the CSR was submitted by the **node-bootstrap** service account in the **system:node** or **system:admin** groups, and confirm the identity of the node.

- To approve them individually, run the following command for each valid CSR:

```
$ oc adm certificate approve <csr_name> 1
```

- 1** **<csr\_name>** is the name of a CSR from the list of current CSRs.

- To approve all pending CSRs, run the following command:

```
$ oc get csr -o go-template='{{range .items}}{{if not .status}}{{.metadata.name}}{"\n"}{{end}}{{end}}' | xargs --no-run-if-empty oc adm certificate approve
```

**NOTE**

Some Operators might not become available until some CSRs are approved.

4. Now that your client requests are approved, you must review the server requests for each machine that you added to the cluster:

```
$ oc get csr
```

**Example output**

```
NAME      AGE   REQUESTOR                                     CONDITION
csr-bfd72 5m26s system:node:ip-10-0-50-126.us-east-2.compute.internal
Pending
csr-c57lv 5m26s system:node:ip-10-0-95-157.us-east-2.compute.internal
Pending
...
```

5. If the remaining CSRs are not approved, and are in the **Pending** status, approve the CSRs for your cluster machines:

- To approve them individually, run the following command for each valid CSR:

```
$ oc adm certificate approve <csr_name> 1
```

**1** **<csr\_name>** is the name of a CSR from the list of current CSRs.

- To approve all pending CSRs, run the following command:

```
$ oc get csr -o go-template='{{range .items}}{{if not .status}}{{.metadata.name}}{\n"}\n{{end}}' | xargs oc adm certificate approve
```

6. After all client and server CSRs have been approved, the machines have the **Ready** status. Verify this by running the following command:

```
$ oc get nodes
```

### Example output

```
NAME      STATUS  ROLES  AGE  VERSION
master-0  Ready   master 73m  v1.20.0
master-1  Ready   master 73m  v1.20.0
master-2  Ready   master 74m  v1.20.0
worker-0  Ready   worker 11m  v1.20.0
worker-1  Ready   worker 11m  v1.20.0
```



### NOTE

It can take a few minutes after approval of the server CSRs for the machines to transition to the **Ready** status.

### Additional information

- For more information on CSRs, see [Certificate Signing Requests](#).

## 1.3.24. Verifying a successful installation

Verify that the OpenShift Container Platform installation is complete.

### Prerequisites

- You have the installation program (**openshift-install**)

### Procedure

- On a command line, enter:

```
$ openshift-install --log-level debug wait-for install-complete
```

The program outputs the console URL, as well as the administrator's login information.

### 1.3.25. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, the Telemetry service, which runs by default to provide metrics about cluster health and the success of updates, requires internet access. If your cluster is connected to the internet, Telemetry runs automatically, and your cluster is registered to [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#).

After you confirm that your [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) inventory is correct, either maintained automatically by Telemetry or manually by using OpenShift Cluster Manager, [use subscription watch](#) to track your OpenShift Container Platform subscriptions at the account or multi-cluster level.

#### Additional resources

- See [About remote health monitoring](#) for more information about the Telemetry service

### 1.3.26. Next steps

- [Customize your cluster](#).
- If necessary, you can [opt out of remote health reporting](#).
- If you need to enable external access to node ports, [configure ingress cluster traffic by using a node port](#).
- If you did not configure RHOSP to accept application traffic over floating IP addresses, [configure RHOSP access with floating IP addresses](#).

## 1.4. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK WITH KURYR ON YOUR OWN INFRASTRUCTURE

In OpenShift Container Platform version 4.6, you can install a cluster on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) that runs on user-provisioned infrastructure.

Using your own infrastructure allows you to integrate your cluster with existing infrastructure and modifications. The process requires more labor on your part than installer-provisioned installations, because you must create all RHOSP resources, like Nova servers, Neutron ports, and security groups. However, Red Hat provides Ansible playbooks to help you in the deployment process.

### 1.4.1. Prerequisites

- Review details about the [OpenShift Container Platform installation and update](#) processes.
  - Verify that OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 is compatible with your RHOSP version in the *Available platforms* section. You can also compare platform support across different versions by viewing the [OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP support matrix](#).
- Verify that your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.
- Have an RHOSP account where you want to install OpenShift Container Platform.
- On the machine from which you run the installation program, have:
  - A single directory in which you can keep the files you create during the installation process
  - Python 3

## 1.4.2. About Kuryr SDN

**Kuryr** is a container network interface (CNI) plug-in solution that uses the [Neutron](#) and [Octavia](#) Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) services to provide networking for pods and Services.

Kuryr and OpenShift Container Platform integration is primarily designed for OpenShift Container Platform clusters running on RHOSP VMs. Kuryr improves the network performance by plugging OpenShift Container Platform pods into RHOSP SDN. In addition, it provides interconnectivity between pods and RHOSP virtual instances.

Kuryr components are installed as pods in OpenShift Container Platform using the **openshift-kuryr** namespace:

- **kuryr-controller** - a single service instance installed on a **master** node. This is modeled in OpenShift Container Platform as a **Deployment** object.
- **kuryr-cni** - a container installing and configuring Kuryr as a CNI driver on each OpenShift Container Platform node. This is modeled in OpenShift Container Platform as a **DaemonSet** object.

The Kuryr controller watches the OpenShift Container Platform API server for pod, service, and namespace create, update, and delete events. It maps the OpenShift Container Platform API calls to corresponding objects in Neutron and Octavia. This means that every network solution that implements the Neutron trunk port functionality can be used to back OpenShift Container Platform via Kuryr. This includes open source solutions such as Open vSwitch (OVS) and Open Virtual Network (OVN) as well as Neutron-compatible commercial SDNs.

Kuryr is recommended for OpenShift Container Platform deployments on encapsulated RHOSP tenant networks to avoid double encapsulation, such as running an encapsulated OpenShift Container Platform SDN over an RHOSP network.

If you use provider networks or tenant VLANs, you do not need to use Kuryr to avoid double encapsulation. The performance benefit is negligible. Depending on your configuration, though, using Kuryr to avoid having two overlays might still be beneficial.

Kuryr is not recommended in deployments where all of the following criteria are true:

- The RHOSP version is less than 16.
- The deployment uses UDP services, or a large number of TCP services on few hypervisors.

or

- The **ovn-octavia** Octavia driver is disabled.
- The deployment uses a large number of TCP services on few hypervisors.

## 1.4.3. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP with Kuryr

When using Kuryr SDN, the pods, services, namespaces, and network policies are using resources from the RHOSP quota; this increases the minimum requirements. Kuryr also has some additional requirements on top of what a default install requires.

Use the following quota to satisfy a default cluster's minimum requirements:

**Table 1.19. Recommended resources for a default OpenShift Container Platform cluster on RHOSP with Kuryr**

Resource	Value
Floating IP addresses	3 - plus the expected number of Services of LoadBalancer type
Ports	1500 - 1 needed per Pod
Routers	1
Subnets	250 - 1 needed per Namespace/Project
Networks	250 - 1 needed per Namespace/Project
RAM	112 GB
vCPUs	28
Volume storage	275 GB
Instances	7
Security groups	250 - 1 needed per Service and per NetworkPolicy
Security group rules	1000
Load balancers	100 - 1 needed per Service
Load balancer listeners	500 - 1 needed per Service-exposed port
Load balancer pools	500 - 1 needed per Service-exposed port

A cluster might function with fewer than recommended resources, but its performance is not guaranteed.



### IMPORTANT

If RHOSP object storage (Swift) is available and operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role, it is used as the default backend for the OpenShift Container Platform image registry. In this case, the volume storage requirement is 175 GB. Swift space requirements vary depending on the size of the image registry.



### IMPORTANT

If you are using Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) version 16 with the Amphora driver rather than the OVN Octavia driver, security groups are associated with service accounts instead of user projects.

Take the following notes into consideration when setting resources:

- The number of ports that are required is larger than the number of pods. Kuryr uses ports pools to have pre-created ports ready to be used by pods and speed up the pods' booting time.
- Each network policy is mapped into an RHOSP security group, and depending on the **NetworkPolicy** spec, one or more rules are added to the security group.
- Each service is mapped to an RHOSP load balancer. Consider this requirement when estimating the number of security groups required for the quota.  
If you are using RHOSP version 15 or earlier, or the **ovn-octavia driver**, each load balancer has a security group with the user project.
- The quota does not account for load balancer resources (such as VM resources), but you must consider these resources when you decide the RHOSP deployment's size. The default installation will have more than 50 load balancers; the clusters must be able to accommodate them.  
If you are using RHOSP version 16 with the OVN Octavia driver enabled, only one load balancer VM is generated; services are load balanced through OVN flows.

An OpenShift Container Platform deployment comprises control plane machines, compute machines, and a bootstrap machine.

To enable Kuryr SDN, your environment must meet the following requirements:

- Run RHOSP 13+.
- Have Overcloud with Octavia.
- Use Neutron Trunk ports extension.
- Use **openvswitch** firewall driver if ML2/OVS Neutron driver is used instead of **ovs-hybrid**.

#### 1.4.3.1. Increasing quota

When using Kuryr SDN, you must increase quotas to satisfy the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) resources used by pods, services, namespaces, and network policies.

##### Procedure

- Increase the quotas for a project by running the following command:

```
$ sudo openstack quota set --secgroups 250 --secgroup-rules 1000 --ports 1500 --subnets 250 --networks 250 <project>
```

#### 1.4.3.2. Configuring Neutron

Kuryr CNI leverages the Neutron Trunks extension to plug containers into the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) SDN, so you must use the **trunks** extension for Kuryr to properly work.

In addition, if you leverage the default ML2/OVS Neutron driver, the firewall must be set to **openvswitch** instead of **ovs\_hybrid** so that security groups are enforced on trunk subports and Kuryr can properly handle network policies.

#### 1.4.3.3. Configuring Octavia

Kuryr SDN uses Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP)'s Octavia LBaaS to implement OpenShift Container Platform services. Thus, you must install and configure Octavia components in RHOSP to use Kuryr SDN.

To enable Octavia, you must include the Octavia service during the installation of the RHOSP Overcloud, or upgrade the Octavia service if the Overcloud already exists. The following steps for enabling Octavia apply to both a clean install of the Overcloud or an Overcloud update.



## NOTE

The following steps only capture the key pieces required during the [deployment of RHOSP](#) when dealing with Octavia. It is also important to note that [registry methods](#) vary.

This example uses the local registry method.

## Procedure

1. If you are using the local registry, create a template to upload the images to the registry. For example:

```
(undercloud) $ openstack overcloud container image prepare \
-e /usr/share/openstack-tripleo-heat-templates/environments/services-docker/octavia.yaml \
--namespace=registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13 \
--push-destination=<local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787 \
--prefix=openstack- \
--tag-from-label {version}-{release} \
--output-env-file=/home/stack/templates/overcloud_images.yaml \
--output-images-file /home/stack/local_registry_images.yaml
```

2. Verify that the **local\_registry\_images.yaml** file contains the Octavia images. For example:

```
...
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-api:13.0-43
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-health-manager:13.0-45
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-housekeeping:13.0-45
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
- imagename: registry.access.redhat.com/rhosp13/openstack-octavia-worker:13.0-44
  push_destination: <local-ip-from-undercloud.conf>:8787
```



## NOTE

The Octavia container versions vary depending upon the specific RHOSP release installed.

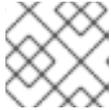
3. Pull the container images from **registry.redhat.io** to the Undercloud node:

```
(undercloud) $ sudo openstack overcloud container image upload \
--config-file /home/stack/local_registry_images.yaml \
--verbose
```

This may take some time depending on the speed of your network and Undercloud disk.

- Since an Octavia load balancer is used to access the OpenShift Container Platform API, you must increase their listeners' default timeouts for the connections. The default timeout is 50 seconds. Increase the timeout to 20 minutes by passing the following file to the Overcloud deploy command:

```
(undercloud) $ cat octavia_timeouts.yaml
parameter_defaults:
  OctaviaTimeoutClientData: 1200000
  OctaviaTimeoutMemberData: 1200000
```



#### NOTE

This is not needed for RHOSP 13.0.13+.

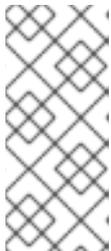
- Install or update your Overcloud environment with Octavia:

```
$ openstack overcloud deploy --templates \
  -e /usr/share/openstack-tripleo-heat-templates/environments/services-docker/octavia.yaml \
  -e octavia_timeouts.yaml
```



#### NOTE

This command only includes the files associated with Octavia; it varies based on your specific installation of RHOSP. See the RHOSP documentation for further information. For more information on customizing your Octavia installation, see [installation of Octavia using Director](#).



#### NOTE

When leveraging Kuryr SDN, the Overcloud installation requires the Neutron **trunk** extension. This is available by default on director deployments. Use the **openvswitch** firewall instead of the default **ovs-hybrid** when the Neutron backend is ML2/OVS. There is no need for modifications if the backend is ML2/OVN.

- In RHOSP versions earlier than 13.0.13, add the project ID to the **octavia.conf** configuration file after you create the project.
  - To enforce network policies across services, like when traffic goes through the Octavia load balancer, you must ensure Octavia creates the Amphora VM security groups on the user project. This change ensures that required load balancer security groups belong to that project, and that they can be updated to enforce services isolation.



#### NOTE

This task is unnecessary in RHOSP version 13.0.13 or later.

Octavia implements a new ACL API that restricts access to the load balancers VIP.

- Get the project ID



```
$ openstack project show <project>
```

### Example output

```
+-----+
| Field      | Value                |
+-----+
| description |                      |
| domain_id  | default              |
| enabled     | True                 |
| id          | PROJECT_ID          |
| is_domain  | False               |
| name       | *<project>*         |
| parent_id  | default              |
| tags       | []                   |
+-----+
```

- b. Add the project ID to **octavia.conf** for the controllers.
  - i. Source the **stackrc** file:

```
$ source stackrc # Undercloud credentials
```

- ii. List the Overcloud controllers:

```
$ openstack server list
```

### Example output

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ID              | Name      | Status | Networks |
| Image          | Flavor   |        |          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 6bef8e73-2ba5-4860-a0b1-3937f8ca7e01 | controller-0 | ACTIVE | ctlplane=192.168.24.8 | overcloud-full | controller |
| dda3173a-ab26-47f8-a2dc-8473b4a67ab9 | compute-0   | ACTIVE | ctlplane=192.168.24.6 | overcloud-full | compute    |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

- iii. SSH into the controller(s).

```
$ ssh heat-admin@192.168.24.8
```

- iv. Edit the **octavia.conf** file to add the project into the list of projects where Amphora security groups are on the user's account.

■

```
# List of project IDs that are allowed to have Load balancer security groups
# belonging to them.
amp_secgroup_allowed_projects = PROJECT_ID
```

- c. Restart the Octavia worker so the new configuration loads.

```
controller-0$ sudo docker restart octavia_worker
```



## NOTE

Depending on your RHOSP environment, Octavia might not support UDP listeners. If you use Kuryr SDN on RHOSP version 13.0.13 or earlier, UDP services are not supported. RHOSP version 16 or later support UDP.

### 1.4.3.3.1. The Octavia OVN Driver

Octavia supports multiple provider drivers through the Octavia API.

To see all available Octavia provider drivers, on a command line, enter:

```
$ openstack loadbalancer provider list
```

#### Example output

```
+-----+-----+
| name | description |
+-----+-----+
| amphora | The Octavia Amphora driver. |
| octavia | Deprecated alias of the Octavia Amphora driver. |
| ovn | Octavia OVN driver. |
+-----+-----+
```

Beginning with RHOSP version 16, the Octavia OVN provider driver (**ovn**) is supported on OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP deployments.

**ovn** is an integration driver for the load balancing that Octavia and OVN provide. It supports basic load balancing capabilities, and is based on OpenFlow rules. The driver is automatically enabled in Octavia by Director on deployments that use OVN Neutron ML2.

The Amphora provider driver is the default driver. If **ovn** is enabled, however, Kuryr uses it.

If Kuryr uses **ovn** instead of Amphora, it offers the following benefits:

- Decreased resource requirements. Kuryr does not require a load balancer VM for each service.
- Reduced network latency.
- Increased service creation speed by using OpenFlow rules instead of a VM for each service.
- Distributed load balancing actions across all nodes instead of centralized on Amphora VMs.

### 1.4.3.4. Known limitations of installing with Kuryr

Using OpenShift Container Platform with Kuryr SDN has several known limitations.

### RHOSP general limitations

OpenShift Container Platform with Kuryr SDN does not support **Service** objects with type **NodePort**.

If the machines subnet is not connected to a router, or if the subnet is connected, but the router has no external gateway set, Kuryr cannot create floating IPs for **Service** objects with type **LoadBalancer**.

- Configuring the **sessionAffinity=ClientIP** property on **Service** objects does not have an effect. Kuryr does not support this setting.

### RHOSP version limitations

Using OpenShift Container Platform with Kuryr SDN has several limitations that depend on the RHOSP version.

- RHOSP versions before 16 use the default Octavia load balancer driver (Amphora). This driver requires that one Amphora load balancer VM is deployed per OpenShift Container Platform service. Creating too many services can cause you to run out of resources. Deployments of later versions of RHOSP that have the OVN Octavia driver disabled also use the Amphora driver. They are subject to the same resource concerns as earlier versions of RHOSP.
- Octavia RHOSP versions before 13.0.13 do not support UDP listeners. Therefore, OpenShift Container Platform UDP services are not supported.
- Octavia RHOSP versions before 13.0.13 cannot listen to multiple protocols on the same port. Services that expose the same port to different protocols, like TCP and UDP, are not supported.
- Kuryr SDN does not support automatic unidling by a service.

### RHOSP environment limitations

There are limitations when using Kuryr SDN that depend on your deployment environment.

Because of Octavia's lack of support for the UDP protocol and multiple listeners, if the RHOSP version is earlier than 13.0.13, Kuryr forces pods to use TCP for DNS resolution.

In Go versions 1.12 and earlier, applications that are compiled with CGO support disabled use UDP only. In this case, the native Go resolver does not recognize the **use-vc** option in **resolv.conf**, which controls whether TCP is forced for DNS resolution. As a result, UDP is still used for DNS resolution, which fails.

To ensure that TCP forcing is allowed, compile applications either with the environment variable **CGO\_ENABLED** set to **1**, i.e. **CGO\_ENABLED=1**, or ensure that the variable is absent.

In Go versions 1.13 and later, TCP is used automatically if DNS resolution using UDP fails.



#### NOTE

musl-based containers, including Alpine-based containers, do not support the **use-vc** option.

### RHOSP upgrade limitations

As a result of the RHOSP upgrade process, the Octavia API might be changed, and upgrades to the Amphora images that are used for load balancers might be required.

You can address API changes on an individual basis.

If the Amphora image is upgraded, the RHOSP operator can handle existing load balancer VMs in two ways:

- Upgrade each VM by triggering a [load balancer failover](#).
- Leave responsibility for upgrading the VMs to users.

If the operator takes the first option, there might be short downtimes during failovers.

If the operator takes the second option, the existing load balancers will not support upgraded Octavia API features, like UDP listeners. In this case, users must recreate their Services to use these features.



### IMPORTANT

If OpenShift Container Platform detects a new Octavia version that supports UDP load balancing, it recreates the DNS service automatically. The service recreation ensures that the service default supports UDP load balancing.

The recreation causes the DNS service approximately one minute of downtime.

#### 1.4.3.5. Control plane machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three control plane machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

#### 1.4.3.6. Compute machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three compute machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 8 GB memory, 2 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

### TIP

Compute machines host the applications that you run on OpenShift Container Platform; aim to run as many as you can.

#### 1.4.3.7. Bootstrap machine

During installation, a bootstrap machine is temporarily provisioned to stand up the control plane. After the production control plane is ready, the bootstrap machine is deprovisioned.

The bootstrap machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

#### 1.4.4. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, you require access to the Internet to install your cluster.

You must have Internet access to:

- Access [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) to download the installation program and perform subscription management. If the cluster has internet access and you do not disable Telemetry, that service automatically entitles your cluster.
- Access [Quay.io](#) to obtain the packages that are required to install your cluster.
- Obtain the packages that are required to perform cluster updates.



#### IMPORTANT

If your cluster cannot have direct Internet access, you can perform a restricted network installation on some types of infrastructure that you provision. During that process, you download the content that is required and use it to populate a mirror registry with the packages that you need to install a cluster and generate the installation program. With some installation types, the environment that you install your cluster in will not require Internet access. Before you update the cluster, you update the content of the mirror registry.

#### 1.4.5. Downloading playbook dependencies

The Ansible playbooks that simplify the installation process on user-provisioned infrastructure require several Python modules. On the machine where you will run the installer, add the modules' repositories and then download them.



#### NOTE

These instructions assume that you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 8.

#### Prerequisites

- Python 3 is installed on your machine.

#### Procedure

1. On a command line, add the repositories:
  - a. Register with Red Hat Subscription Manager:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager register # If not done already
```

- b. Pull the latest subscription data:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager attach --pool=$YOUR_POOLID # If not done already
```

- c. Disable the current repositories:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager repos --disable=* # If not done already
```

- d. Add the required repositories:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager repos \
  --enable=rhel-8-for-x86_64-baseos-rpms \
  --enable=openstack-16-tools-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms \
  --enable=ansible-2.9-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms \
  --enable=rhel-8-for-x86_64-appstream-rpms
```

2. Install the modules:

```
$ sudo yum install python3-openstackclient ansible python3-openstacksdk python3-netaddr
```

3. Ensure that the **python** command points to **python3**:

```
$ sudo alternatives --set python /usr/bin/python3
```

### 1.4.6. Downloading the installation playbooks

Download Ansible playbooks that you can use to install OpenShift Container Platform on your own Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) infrastructure.

#### Prerequisites

- The curl command-line tool is available on your machine.

#### Procedure

- To download the playbooks to your working directory, run the following script from a command line:

```
$ xargs -n 1 curl -O <<< '
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/bootstrap.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/common.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/compute-nodes.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/control-
plane.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/inventory.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-
4.6/upi/openstack/network.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/security-
groups.yaml
  https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
bootstrap.yaml
```

```

https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
compute-nodes.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
control-plane.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
load-balancers.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
network.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
security-groups.yaml
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/openshift/installer/release-4.6/upi/openstack/down-
containers.yaml'

```

The playbooks are downloaded to your machine.



### IMPORTANT

During the installation process, you can modify the playbooks to configure your deployment.

Retain all playbooks for the life of your cluster. You must have the playbooks to remove your OpenShift Container Platform cluster from RHOSP.



### IMPORTANT

You must match any edits you make in the **bootstrap.yaml**, **compute-nodes.yaml**, **control-plane.yaml**, **network.yaml**, and **security-groups.yaml** files to the corresponding playbooks that are prefixed with **down-**. For example, edits to the **bootstrap.yaml** file must be reflected in the **down-bootstrap.yaml** file, too. If you do not edit both files, the supported cluster removal process will fail.

## 1.4.7. Obtaining the installation program

Before you install OpenShift Container Platform, download the installation file on a local computer.

### Prerequisites

- You have a computer that runs Linux or macOS, with 500 MB of local disk space

### Procedure

1. Access the [Infrastructure Provider](#) page on the OpenShift Cluster Manager site. If you have a Red Hat account, log in with your credentials. If you do not, create an account.
2. Select your infrastructure provider.
3. Navigate to the page for your installation type, download the installation program for your operating system, and place the file in the directory where you will store the installation configuration files.

**IMPORTANT**

The installation program creates several files on the computer that you use to install your cluster. You must keep the installation program and the files that the installation program creates after you finish installing the cluster. Both files are required to delete the cluster.

**IMPORTANT**

Deleting the files created by the installation program does not remove your cluster, even if the cluster failed during installation. To remove your cluster, complete the OpenShift Container Platform uninstallation procedures for your specific cloud provider.

4. Extract the installation program. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ tar xvf openshift-install-linux.tar.gz
```

5. Download your installation [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) . This pull secret allows you to authenticate with the services that are provided by the included authorities, including Quay.io, which serves the container images for OpenShift Container Platform components.

### 1.4.8. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent

If you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery on your cluster, you must provide an SSH key to both your **ssh-agent** and the installation program. You can use this key to access the bootstrap machine in a public cluster to troubleshoot installation issues.

**NOTE**

In a production environment, you require disaster recovery and debugging.

You can use this key to SSH into the master nodes as the user **core**. When you deploy the cluster, the key is added to the **core** user's `~/.ssh/authorized_keys` list.

**Procedure**

1. If you do not have an SSH key that is configured for password-less authentication on your computer, create one. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```
$ ssh-keygen -t ed25519 -N "" \
  -f <path>/<file_name> 1
```

- 1 Specify the path and file name, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`, of the new SSH key. If you have an existing key pair, ensure your public key is in the your `~/.ssh` directory.

Running this command generates an SSH key that does not require a password in the location that you specified.

**NOTE**

If you plan to install an OpenShift Container Platform cluster that uses FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries on the **x86\_64** architecture, do not create a key that uses the **ed25519** algorithm. Instead, create a key that uses the **rsa** or **ecdsa** algorithm.

2. Start the **ssh-agent** process as a background task:

```
$ eval "$(ssh-agent -s)"
```

**Example output**

```
Agent pid 31874
```

**NOTE**

If your cluster is in FIPS mode, only use FIPS-compliant algorithms to generate the SSH key. The key must be either RSA or ECDSA.

3. Add your SSH private key to the **ssh-agent**:

```
$ ssh-add <path>/<file_name> 1
```

**Example output**

```
Identity added: /home/<you>/<path>/<file_name> (<computer_name>)
```

- 1** Specify the path and file name for your SSH private key, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`

**Next steps**

- When you install OpenShift Container Platform, provide the SSH public key to the installation program.

**1.4.9. Creating the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image**

The OpenShift Container Platform installation program requires that a Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image be present in the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) cluster. Retrieve the latest RHCOS image, then upload it using the RHOSP CLI.

**Prerequisites**

- The RHOSP CLI is installed.

**Procedure**

1. Log in to the Red Hat Customer Portal's [Product Downloads page](#).
2. Under **Version**, select the most recent release of OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 for Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 8.



### IMPORTANT

The RHCOS images might not change with every release of OpenShift Container Platform. You must download images with the highest version that is less than or equal to the OpenShift Container Platform version that you install. Use the image versions that match your OpenShift Container Platform version if they are available.

3. Download the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) - OpenStack Image (QCOW)* .
4. Decompress the image.



### NOTE

You must decompress the RHOSP image before the cluster can use it. The name of the downloaded file might not contain a compression extension, like **.gz** or **.tgz**. To find out if or how the file is compressed, in a command line, enter:

```
$ file <name_of_downloaded_file>
```

5. From the image that you downloaded, create an image that is named **rhcos** in your cluster by using the RHOSP CLI:

```
$ openstack image create --container-format=bare --disk-format=qcow2 --file rhcos-
${RHCOS_VERSION}-openstack.qcow2 rhcos
```



### IMPORTANT

Depending on your RHOSP environment, you might be able to upload the image in either **.raw** or **.qcow2** formats. If you use Ceph, you must use the **.raw** format.



### WARNING

If the installation program finds multiple images with the same name, it chooses one of them at random. To avoid this behavior, create unique names for resources in RHOSP.

After you upload the image to RHOSP, it is usable in the installation process.

## 1.4.10. Verifying external network access

The OpenShift Container Platform installation process requires external network access. You must provide an external network value to it, or deployment fails. Before you begin the process, verify that a network with the external router type exists in Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

### Prerequisites

- [Configure OpenStack's networking service to have DHCP agents forward instances' DNS queries](#)

## Procedure

1. Using the RHOSP CLI, verify the name and ID of the 'External' network:

```
$ openstack network list --long -c ID -c Name -c "Router Type"
```

## Example output

```
+-----+-----+-----+
| ID                | Name          | Router Type |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 148a8023-62a7-4672-b018-003462f8d7dc | public_network | External    |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

A network with an external router type appears in the network list. If at least one does not, see [Creating a default floating IP network](#) and [Creating a default provider network](#).



## NOTE

If the Neutron trunk service plug-in is enabled, a trunk port is created by default. For more information, see [Neutron trunk port](#).

## 1.4.11. Enabling access to the environment

At deployment, all OpenShift Container Platform machines are created in a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP)-tenant network. Therefore, they are not accessible directly in most RHOSP deployments.

You can configure OpenShift Container Platform API and application access by using floating IP addresses (FIPs) during installation. You can also complete an installation without configuring FIPs, but the installer will not configure a way to reach the API or applications externally.

### 1.4.11.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses

Create floating IP (FIP) addresses for external access to the OpenShift Container Platform API, cluster applications, and the bootstrap process.

## Procedure

1. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the API FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "API <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"
<external_network>
```

2. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the apps, or Ingress, FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "Ingress <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"
<external_network>
```

3. By using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the bootstrap FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "bootstrap machine" <external_network>
```

4. Add records that follow these patterns to your DNS server for the API and Ingress FIPs:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <API_FIP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <apps_FIP>
```

## NOTE

If you do not control the DNS server, you can access the cluster by adding the cluster domain names such as the following to your `/etc/hosts` file:

- `<api_floating_ip> api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> grafana-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> prometheus-k8s-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> oauth-openshift.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `<application_floating_ip> console-openshift-console.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`
- `application_floating_ip integrated-oauth-server-openshift-authentication.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>`

The cluster domain names in the `/etc/hosts` file grant access to the web console and the monitoring interface of your cluster locally. You can also use the `kubectl` or `oc`. You can access the user applications by using the additional entries pointing to the `<application_floating_ip>`. This action makes the API and applications accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment, but does allow installation for development and testing.

5. Add the FIPs to the `inventory.yaml` file as the values of the following variables:

- `os_api_fip`
- `os_bootstrap_fip`
- `os_ingress_fip`

If you use these values, you must also enter an external network as the value of the `os_external_network` variable in the `inventory.yaml` file.

## TIP

You can make OpenShift Container Platform resources available outside of the cluster by assigning a floating IP address and updating your firewall configuration.

### 1.4.11.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses

You can install OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) without providing floating IP addresses.

In the **inventory.yaml** file, do not define the following variables:

- **os\_api\_fip**
- **os\_bootstrap\_fip**
- **os\_ingress\_fip**

If you cannot provide an external network, you can also leave **os\_external\_network** blank. If you do not provide a value for **os\_external\_network**, a router is not created for you, and, without additional action, the installer will fail to retrieve an image from Glance. Later in the installation process, when you create network resources, you must configure external connectivity on your own.

If you run the installer with the **wait-for** command from a system that cannot reach the cluster API due to a lack of floating IP addresses or name resolution, installation fails. To prevent installation failure in these cases, you can use a proxy network or run the installer from a system that is on the same network as your machines.



## NOTE

You can enable name resolution by creating DNS records for the API and Ingress ports. For example:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <api_port_IP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <ingress_port_IP>
```

If you do not control the DNS server, you can add the record to your **/etc/hosts** file. This action makes the API accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment but does allow installation for development and testing.

## 1.4.12. Defining parameters for the installation program

The OpenShift Container Platform installation program relies on a file that is called **clouds.yaml**. The file describes Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters, including the project name, log in information, and authorization service URLs.

### Procedure

1. Create the **clouds.yaml** file:
  - If your RHOSP distribution includes the Horizon web UI, generate a **clouds.yaml** file in it.



## IMPORTANT

Remember to add a password to the **auth** field. You can also keep secrets in [a separate file](#) from **clouds.yaml**.

- If your RHOSP distribution does not include the Horizon web UI, or you do not want to use Horizon, create the file yourself. For detailed information about **clouds.yaml**, see [Config files](#) in the RHOSP documentation.

```
clouds:
```

```

shiftstack:
  auth:
    auth_url: http://10.10.14.42:5000/v3
    project_name: shiftstack
    username: shiftstack_user
    password: XXX
    user_domain_name: Default
    project_domain_name: Default
dev-env:
  region_name: RegionOne
  auth:
    username: 'devuser'
    password: XXX
    project_name: 'devonly'
    auth_url: 'https://10.10.14.22:5001/v2.0'

```

2. If your RHOSP installation uses self-signed certificate authority (CA) certificates for endpoint authentication:

- a. Copy the certificate authority file to your machine.
- b. Add the machine to the certificate authority trust bundle:

```
$ sudo cp ca.crt.pem /etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/
```

- c. Update the trust bundle:

```
$ sudo update-ca-trust extract
```

- d. Add the **cacerts** key to the **clouds.yaml** file. The value must be an absolute, non-root-accessible path to the CA certificate:

```

clouds:
  shiftstack:
    ...
    cacert: "/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca.crt.pem"

```

### TIP

After you run the installer with a custom CA certificate, you can update the certificate by editing the value of the **ca-cert.pem** key in the **cloud-provider-config** keymap. On a command line, run:

```
$ oc edit configmap -n openshift-config cloud-provider-config
```

3. Place the **clouds.yaml** file in one of the following locations:
  - a. The value of the **OS\_CLIENT\_CONFIG\_FILE** environment variable
  - b. The current directory
  - c. A Unix-specific user configuration directory, for example **~/.config/openstack/clouds.yaml**
  - d. A Unix-specific site configuration directory, for example **/etc/openstack/clouds.yaml**

The installation program searches for **clouds.yaml** in that order.

### 1.4.13. Creating the installation configuration file

You can customize the OpenShift Container Platform cluster you install on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

#### Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster.

#### Procedure

1. Create the **install-config.yaml** file.
  - a. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and run the following command:

```
$ ./openshift-install create install-config --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the directory name to store the files that the installation program creates.



#### IMPORTANT

Specify an empty directory. Some installation assets, like bootstrap X.509 certificates have short expiration intervals, so you must not reuse an installation directory. If you want to reuse individual files from another cluster installation, you can copy them into your directory. However, the file names for the installation assets might change between releases. Use caution when copying installation files from an earlier OpenShift Container Platform version.

- b. At the prompts, provide the configuration details for your cloud:
  - i. Optional: Select an SSH key to use to access your cluster machines.



#### NOTE

For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your **ssh-agent** process uses.

- ii. Select **openstack** as the platform to target.
- iii. Specify the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) external network name to use for installing the cluster.
- iv. Specify the floating IP address to use for external access to the OpenShift API.
- v. Specify a RHOSP flavor with at least 16 GB RAM to use for control plane and compute nodes.

- vi. Select the base domain to deploy the cluster to. All DNS records will be sub-domains of this base and will also include the cluster name.
  - vii. Enter a name for your cluster. The name must be 14 or fewer characters long.
  - viii. Paste the [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) .
2. Modify the **install-config.yaml** file. You can find more information about the available parameters in the **Installation configuration parameters** section.
  3. Back up the **install-config.yaml** file so that you can use it to install multiple clusters.



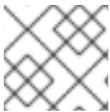
### IMPORTANT

The **install-config.yaml** file is consumed during the installation process. If you want to reuse the file, you must back it up now.

You now have the file **install-config.yaml** in the directory that you specified.

## 1.4.14. Installation configuration parameters

Before you deploy an OpenShift Container Platform cluster, you provide parameter values to describe your account on the cloud platform that hosts your cluster and optionally customize your cluster's platform. When you create the **install-config.yaml** installation configuration file, you provide values for the required parameters through the command line. If you customize your cluster, you can modify the **install-config.yaml** file to provide more details about the platform.



### NOTE

After installation, you cannot modify these parameters in the **install-config.yaml** file.



### IMPORTANT

The **openshift-install** command does not validate field names for parameters. If an incorrect name is specified, the related file or object is not created, and no error is reported. Ensure that the field names for any parameters that are specified are correct.

### 1.4.14.1. Required configuration parameters

Required installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.20. Required parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>apiVersion</b>	The API version for the <b>install-config.yaml</b> content. The current version is <b>v1</b> . The installer may also support older API versions.	String

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>baseDomain</b>	The base domain of your cloud provider. The base domain is used to create routes to your OpenShift Container Platform cluster components. The full DNS name for your cluster is a combination of the <b>baseDomain</b> and <b>metadata.name</b> parameter values that uses the <b>&lt;metadata.name&gt;.&lt;baseDomain&gt;</b> format.	A fully-qualified domain or subdomain name, such as <b>example.com</b> .
<b>metadata</b>	Kubernetes resource <b>ObjectMeta</b> , from which only the <b>name</b> parameter is consumed.	Object
<b>metadata.name</b>	The name of the cluster. DNS records for the cluster are all subdomains of <b>{{.metadata.name}}</b> . <b>{{.baseDomain}}</b> .	String of lowercase letters, hyphens (-), and periods (.), such as <b>dev</b> . The string must be 14 characters or fewer long.
<b>platform</b>	The configuration for the specific platform upon which to perform the installation: <b>aws, baremetal, azure, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> . For additional information about <b>platform.&lt;platform&gt;</b> parameters, consult the following table for your specific platform.	Object
<b>pullSecret</b>	Get a <a href="#">pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager</a> to authenticate downloading container images for OpenShift Container Platform components from services such as Quay.io.	<pre>{   "auths":{     "cloud.openshift.com":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     },     "quay.io":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     }   } }</pre>

### 1.4.14.2. Network configuration parameters

You can customize your installation configuration based on the requirements of your existing network infrastructure. For example, you can expand the IP address block for the cluster network or provide different IP address blocks than the defaults.

Only IPv4 addresses are supported.

Table 1.21. Network parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking</b>	The configuration for the cluster network.	Object   <b>NOTE</b> You cannot modify parameters specified by the <b>networking</b> object after installation.
<b>networking.network Type</b>	The cluster network provider Container Network Interface (CNI) plug-in to install.	Either <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> or <b>OVNKubernetes</b> . The default value is <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for pods.  The default value is <b>10.128.0.0/14</b> with a host prefix of <b>/23</b> .  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   clusterNetwork:     - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14       hostPrefix: 23</pre>
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.clusterNetwork</b> . An IP address block.  An IPv4 network.	An IP address block in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) notation. The prefix length for an IPv4 block is between <b>0</b> and <b>32</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.hostPrefix</b>	The subnet prefix length to assign to each individual node. For example, if <b>hostPrefix</b> is set to <b>23</b> then each node is assigned a <b>/23</b> subnet out of the given <b>cidr</b> . A <b>hostPrefix</b> value of <b>23</b> provides 510 ( $2^{(32 - 23)} - 2$ ) pod IP addresses.	A subnet prefix.  The default value is <b>23</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking.serviceNetwork</b>	<p>The IP address block for services. The default value is <b>172.30.0.0/16</b>.</p> <p>The OpenShift SDN and OVN-Kubernetes network providers support only a single IP address block for the service network.</p>	<p>An array with an IP address block in CIDR format. For example:</p> <pre>networking:   serviceNetwork:     - 172.30.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork</b>	<p>The IP address blocks for machines.</p> <p>If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.</p>	<p>An array of objects. For example:</p> <pre>networking:   machineNetwork:     - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork.cidr</b>	<p>Required if you use <b>networking.machineNetwork</b>. An IP address block. The default value is <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> for all platforms other than libvirt. For libvirt, the default value is <b>192.168.126.0/24</b>.</p>	<p>An IP network block in CIDR notation.</p> <p>For example, <b>10.0.0.0/16</b>.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Set the <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> to match the CIDR that the preferred NIC resides in.</p> </div> </div>

### 1.4.14.3. Optional configuration parameters

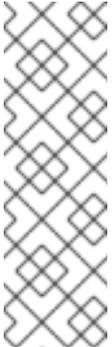
Optional installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.22. Optional parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>additionalTrustBundle</b>	<p>A PEM-encoded X.509 certificate bundle that is added to the nodes' trusted certificate store. This trust bundle may also be used when a proxy has been configured.</p>	String
<b>compute</b>	<p>The configuration for the machines that comprise the compute nodes.</p>	<p>Array of machine-pool objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.</p>

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>compute.hyperthreading</b>	Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b> , on compute machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.   <b>IMPORTANT</b>  If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>compute.name</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>worker</b>
<b>compute.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider to host the worker machines. This parameter value must match the <b>controlPlane.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> , or <b>{}</b>
<b>compute.replicas</b>	The number of compute machines, which are also known as worker machines, to provision.	A positive integer greater than or equal to <b>2</b> . The default value is <b>3</b> .
<b>controlPlane</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the control plane.	Array of <b>MachinePool</b> objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String
<b>controlPlane.hyperthreading</b>	Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b> , on control plane machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.   <b>IMPORTANT</b>  If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>controlPlane.name</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>master</b>
<b>controlPlane.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider that hosts the control plane machines. This parameter value must match the <b>compute.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> , or <b>{}</b>
<b>controlPlane.replicas</b>	The number of control plane machines to provision.	The only supported value is <b>3</b> , which is the default value.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>credentialsMode</b>	<p>The Cloud Credential Operator (CCO) mode. If no mode is specified, the CCO dynamically tries to determine the capabilities of the provided credentials, with a preference for mint mode on the platforms where multiple modes are supported.</p>  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Not all CCO modes are supported for all cloud providers. For more information on CCO modes, see the <i>Cloud Credential Operator</i> entry in the <i>Red Hat Operators reference content</i>.</p>	<b>Mint, Passthrough, Manual</b> , or an empty string ("").
<b>fips</b>	<p>Enable or disable FIPS mode. The default is <b>false</b> (disabled). If FIPS mode is enabled, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) machines that OpenShift Container Platform runs on bypass the default Kubernetes cryptography suite and use the cryptography modules that are provided with RHCOS instead.</p>  <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>The use of FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries is only supported on OpenShift Container Platform deployments on the <b>x86_64</b> architecture.</p>  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>If you are using Azure File storage, you cannot enable FIPS mode.</p>	<b>false</b> or <b>true</b>
<b>imageContentSources</b>	Sources and repositories for the release-image content.	Array of objects. Includes a <b>source</b> and, optionally, <b>mirrors</b> , as described in the following rows of this table.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>imageContentSources.source</b>	Required if you use <b>imageContentSources</b> . Specify the repository that users refer to, for example, in image pull specifications.	String
<b>imageContentSources.mirrors</b>	Specify one or more repositories that may also contain the same images.	Array of strings
<b>publish</b>	How to publish or expose the user-facing endpoints of your cluster, such as the Kubernetes API, OpenShift routes.	<p><b>Internal</b> or <b>External</b>. The default value is <b>External</b>.</p> <p>Setting this field to <b>Internal</b> is not supported on non-cloud platforms.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If the value of the field is set to <b>Internal</b>, the cluster will become non-functional. For more information, refer to <a href="#">BZ#1953035</a>.</p> </div> </div>
<b>sshKey</b>	<p>The SSH key or keys to authenticate access your cluster machines.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your <b>ssh-agent</b> process uses.</p> </div> </div>	<p>One or more keys. For example:</p> <pre>sshKey:   &lt;key1&gt;   &lt;key2&gt;   &lt;key3&gt;</pre>

#### 1.4.14.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters

Additional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.23. Additional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For compute machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For compute machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For control plane machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For control plane machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.cloud</b>	The name of the RHOSP cloud to use from the list of clouds in the <b>clouds.yaml</b> file.	String, for example <b>MyCloud</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b>	The RHOSP external network name to be used for installation.	String, for example <b>external</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.computeFlavor</b>	The RHOSP flavor to use for control plane and compute machines.	String, for example <b>m1.xlarge</b> .

#### 1.4.14.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters

Optional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.24. Optional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIds</b>	Additional networks that are associated with compute machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with compute machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with control plane machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with control plane machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <code>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</code> .
<b>platform.openstack.clusterOSImage</b>	<p>The location from which the installer downloads the RHCOS image.</p> <p>You must set this parameter to perform an installation in a restricted network.</p>	<p>An HTTP or HTTPS URL, optionally with an SHA-256 checksum.</p> <p>For example,  <b><code>http://mirror.example.com/images/rhcos-43.81.201912131630.0-openstack.x86_64.qcow2.gz?sha256=ffebbd68e8a1f2a245ca19522c16c86f67f9ac8e4e0c1f0a812b068b16f7265d</code></b>. The value can also be the name of an existing Glance image, for example <b><code>my-rhcos</code></b>.</p>
<b>platform.openstack.defaultMachinePlatform</b>	The default machine pool platform configuration.	<pre>{   "type": "ml.large",   "rootVolume": {     "size": 30,     "type": "performance"   } }</pre>
<b>platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP</b>	<p>An existing floating IP address to associate with the Ingress port. To use this property, you must also define the <b><code>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</code></b> property.</p>	An IP address, for example <b><code>128.0.0.1</code></b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.lbfloatingIP</b>	An existing floating IP address to associate with the API load balancer. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalDNS</b>	IP addresses for external DNS servers that cluster instances use for DNS resolution.	A list of IP addresses as strings. For example, <b>["8.8.8.8", "192.168.1.12"]</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.machinesSubnet</b>	<p>The UUID of a RHOSP subnet that the cluster's nodes use. Nodes and virtual IP (VIP) ports are created on this subnet.</p> <p>The first item in <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> must match the value of <b>machinesSubnet</b>.</p> <p>If you deploy to a custom subnet, you cannot specify an external DNS server to the OpenShift Container Platform installer. Instead, <a href="#">add DNS to the subnet in RHOSP</a>.</p>	A UUID as a string. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .

#### 1.4.14.6. Custom subnets in RHOSP deployments

Optionally, you can deploy a cluster on a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) subnet of your choice. The subnet's GUID is passed as the value of **platform.openstack.machinesSubnet** in the **install-config.yaml** file.

This subnet is used as the cluster's primary subnet; nodes and ports are created on it.

Before you run the OpenShift Container Platform installer with a custom subnet, verify that:

- The target network and subnet are available.
- DHCP is enabled on the target subnet.
- You can provide installer credentials that have permission to create ports on the target network.
- If your network configuration requires a router, it is created in RHOSP. Some configurations rely on routers for floating IP address translation.

- Your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.



## NOTE

By default, the API VIP takes x.x.x.5 and the Ingress VIP takes x.x.x.7 from your network's CIDR block. To override these default values, set values for **platform.openstack.apiVIP** and **platform.openstack.ingressVIP** that are outside of the DHCP allocation pool.

### 1.4.14.7. Sample customized install-config.yaml file for RHOSP with Kuryr

To deploy with Kuryr SDN instead of the default OpenShift SDN, you must modify the **install-config.yaml** file to include **Kuryr** as the desired **networking.networkType** and proceed with the default OpenShift Container Platform SDN installation steps. This sample **install-config.yaml** demonstrates all of the possible Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) customization options.



## IMPORTANT

This sample file is provided for reference only. You must obtain your **install-config.yaml** file by using the installation program.

```

apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: example.com
clusterID: os-test
controlPlane:
  name: master
  platform: {}
  replicas: 3
compute:
- name: worker
  platform:
    openstack:
      type: ml.large
  replicas: 3
metadata:
  name: example
networking:
  clusterNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14
    hostPrefix: 23
  machineNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16
  serviceNetwork:
  - 172.30.0.0/16 1
  networkType: Kuryr
platform:
  openstack:
    cloud: mycloud
    externalNetwork: external
    computeFlavor: m1.xlarge
    lbFloatingIP: 128.0.0.1
    trunkSupport: true 2

```

```
octaviaSupport: true 3
pullSecret: '{"auths": ...}'
sshKey: ssh-ed25519 AAAA...
```

- 1** The Amphora Octavia driver creates two ports per load balancer. As a result, the service subnet that the installer creates is twice the size of the CIDR that is specified as the value of the **serviceNetwork** property. The larger range is required to prevent IP address conflicts.
- 2** **3** Both **trunkSupport** and **octaviaSupport** are automatically discovered by the installer, so there is no need to set them. But if your environment does not meet both requirements, Kuryr SDN will not properly work. Trunks are needed to connect the pods to the RHOSP network and Octavia is required to create the OpenShift Container Platform services.

#### 1.4.14.8. Kuryr ports pools

A Kuryr ports pool maintains a number of ports on standby for pod creation.

Keeping ports on standby minimizes pod creation time. Without ports pools, Kuryr must explicitly request port creation or deletion whenever a pod is created or deleted.

The Neutron ports that Kuryr uses are created in subnets that are tied to namespaces. These pod ports are also added as subports to the primary port of OpenShift Container Platform cluster nodes.

Because Kuryr keeps each namespace in a separate subnet, a separate ports pool is maintained for each namespace-worker pair.

Prior to installing a cluster, you can set the following parameters in the **cluster-network-03-config.yml** manifest file to configure ports pool behavior:

- The **enablePortPoolsPrepopulation** parameter controls pool prepopulation, which forces Kuryr to add ports to the pool when it is created, such as when a new host is added, or a new namespace is created. The default value is **false**.
- The **poolMinPorts** parameter is the minimum number of free ports that are kept in the pool. The default value is **1**.
- The **poolMaxPorts** parameter is the maximum number of free ports that are kept in the pool. A value of **0** disables that upper bound. This is the default setting. If your OpenStack port quota is low, or you have a limited number of IP addresses on the pod network, consider setting this option to ensure that unneeded ports are deleted.
- The **poolBatchPorts** parameter defines the maximum number of Neutron ports that can be created at once. The default value is **3**.

#### 1.4.14.9. Adjusting Kuryr ports pools during installation

During installation, you can configure how Kuryr manages Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) Neutron ports to control the speed and efficiency of pod creation.

##### Prerequisites

- Create and modify the **install-config.yaml** file.

##### Procedure

1. From a command line, create the manifest files:

```
$ ./openshift-install create manifests --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1 For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the name of the directory that contains the **install-config.yaml** file for your cluster.

2. Create a file that is named **cluster-network-03-config.yml** in the **<installation\_directory>/manifests/** directory:

```
$ touch <installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-network-03-config.yml 1
```

- 1 For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the directory name that contains the **manifests/** directory for your cluster.

After creating the file, several network configuration files are in the **manifests/** directory, as shown:

```
$ ls <installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-network-*
```

### Example output

```
cluster-network-01-crd.yml
cluster-network-02-config.yml
cluster-network-03-config.yml
```

3. Open the **cluster-network-03-config.yml** file in an editor, and enter a custom resource (CR) that describes the Cluster Network Operator configuration that you want:

```
$ oc edit networks.operator.openshift.io cluster
```

4. Edit the settings to meet your requirements. The following file is provided as an example:

```
apiVersion: operator.openshift.io/v1
kind: Network
metadata:
  name: cluster
spec:
  clusterNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14
    hostPrefix: 23
  serviceNetwork:
  - 172.30.0.0/16
  defaultNetwork:
    type: Kuryr
    kuryrConfig:
      enablePortPoolsPrepopulation: false 1
      poolMinPorts: 1 2
      poolBatchPorts: 3 3
      poolMaxPorts: 5 4
      openstackServiceNetwork: 172.30.0.0/15 5
```

- 1 Set the value of **enablePortPoolsPrepopulation** to **true** to make Kuryr create new Neutron ports after a namespace is created or a new node is added to the cluster. This setting raises the Neutron ports quota but can reduce the time that is required to spawn pods. The default value is **false**.
- 2 Kuryr creates new ports for a pool if the number of free ports in that pool is lower than the value of **poolMinPorts**. The default value is **1**.
- 3 **poolBatchPorts** controls the number of new ports that are created if the number of free ports is lower than the value of **poolMinPorts**. The default value is **3**.
- 4 If the number of free ports in a pool is higher than the value of **poolMaxPorts**, Kuryr deletes them until the number matches that value. Setting this value to **0** disables this upper bound, preventing pools from shrinking. The default value is **0**.
- 5 The **openStackServiceNetwork** parameter defines the CIDR range of the network from which IP addresses are allocated to RHOSP Octavia's LoadBalancers.

If this parameter is used with the Amphora driver, Octavia takes two IP addresses from this network for each load balancer: one for OpenShift and the other for VRRP connections. Because these IP addresses are managed by OpenShift Container Platform and Neutron respectively, they must come from different pools. Therefore, the value of **openStackServiceNetwork** must be at least twice the size of the value of **serviceNetwork**, and the value of **serviceNetwork** must overlap entirely with the range that is defined by **openStackServiceNetwork**.

The CNO verifies that VRRP IP addresses that are taken from the range that is defined by this parameter do not overlap with the range that is defined by the **serviceNetwork** parameter.

If this parameter is not set, the CNO uses an expanded value of **serviceNetwork** that is determined by decrementing the prefix size by 1.

5. Save the **cluster-network-03-config.yml** file, and exit the text editor.
6. Optional: Back up the **manifests/cluster-network-03-config.yml** file. The installation program deletes the **manifests/** directory while creating the cluster.

#### 1.4.14.10. Setting a custom subnet for machines

The IP range that the installation program uses by default might not match the Neutron subnet that you create when you install OpenShift Container Platform. If necessary, update the CIDR value for new machines by editing the installation configuration file.

#### Prerequisites

- You have the **install-config.yaml** file that was generated by the OpenShift Container Platform installation program.

#### Procedure

1. On a command line, browse to the directory that contains **install-config.yaml**.
2. From that directory, either run a script to edit the **install-config.yaml** file or update the file manually:
  - To set the value by using a script, run:

```
$ python -c '
import yaml;
path = "install-config.yaml";
data = yaml.safe_load(open(path));
data["networking"]["machineNetwork"] = [{"cidr": "192.168.0.0/18"}]; 1
open(path, "w").write(yaml.dump(data, default_flow_style=False))'
```

**1** Insert a value that matches your intended Neutron subnet, e.g. **192.0.2.0/24**.

- To set the value manually, open the file and set the value of **networking.machineCIDR** to something that matches your intended Neutron subnet.

#### 1.4.14.11. Emptying compute machine pools

To proceed with an installation that uses your own infrastructure, set the number of compute machines in the installation configuration file to zero. Later, you create these machines manually.

##### Prerequisites

- You have the **install-config.yaml** file that was generated by the OpenShift Container Platform installation program.

##### Procedure

1. On a command line, browse to the directory that contains **install-config.yaml**.
2. From that directory, either run a script to edit the **install-config.yaml** file or update the file manually:
  - To set the value by using a script, run:

```
$ python -c '
import yaml;
path = "install-config.yaml";
data = yaml.safe_load(open(path));
data["compute"][0]["replicas"] = 0;
open(path, "w").write(yaml.dump(data, default_flow_style=False))'
```

- To set the value manually, open the file and set the value of **compute.<first entry>.replicas** to **0**.

#### 1.4.14.12. Modifying the network type

By default, the installation program selects the **OpenShiftSDN** network type. To use Kuryr instead, change the value in the installation configuration file that the program generated.

##### Prerequisites

- You have the file **install-config.yaml** that was generated by the OpenShift Container Platform installation program

##### Procedure

1. In a command prompt, browse to the directory that contains **install-config.yaml**.
2. From that directory, either run a script to edit the **install-config.yaml** file or update the file manually:
  - To set the value by using a script, run:

```
$ python -c '
import yaml;
path = "install-config.yaml";
data = yaml.safe_load(open(path));
data["networking"]["networkType"] = "Kuryr";
open(path, "w").write(yaml.dump(data, default_flow_style=False))'
```

- To set the value manually, open the file and set **networking.networkType** to **"Kuryr"**.

### 1.4.15. Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files

Because you must modify some cluster definition files and manually start the cluster machines, you must generate the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files that the cluster needs to make its machines.

The installation configuration file transforms into the Kubernetes manifests. The manifests wrap into the Ignition configuration files, which are later used to create the cluster.



#### IMPORTANT

- The Ignition config files that the installation program generates contain certificates that expire after 24 hours, which are then renewed at that time. If the cluster is shut down before renewing the certificates and the cluster is later restarted after the 24 hours have elapsed, the cluster automatically recovers the expired certificates. The exception is that you must manually approve the pending **node-bootstrapper** certificate signing requests (CSRs) to recover kubelet certificates. See the documentation for *Recovering from expired control plane certificates* for more information.
- It is recommended that you use Ignition config files within 12 hours after they are generated because the 24-hour certificate rotates from 16 to 22 hours after the cluster is installed. By using the Ignition config files within 12 hours, you can avoid installation failure if the certificate update runs during installation.

#### Prerequisites

- You obtained the OpenShift Container Platform installation program.
- You created the **install-config.yaml** installation configuration file.

#### Procedure

1. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and generate the Kubernetes manifests for the cluster:

```
$ ./openshift-install create manifests --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the installation directory that contains the **install-config.yaml** file you created.

- Remove the Kubernetes manifest files that define the control plane machines and compute machine sets:

```
$ rm -f openshift/99_openshift-cluster-api_master-machines-*.yaml openshift/99_openshift-cluster-api_worker-machineset-*.yaml
```

Because you create and manage these resources yourself, you do not have to initialize them.

- You can preserve the machine set files to create compute machines by using the machine API, but you must update references to them to match your environment.
- Check that the **mastersSchedulable** parameter in the `<installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-scheduler-02-config.yml` Kubernetes manifest file is set to **false**. This setting prevents pods from being scheduled on the control plane machines:
    - Open the `<installation_directory>/manifests/cluster-scheduler-02-config.yml` file.
    - Locate the **mastersSchedulable** parameter and ensure that it is set to **false**.
    - Save and exit the file.
  - To create the Ignition configuration files, run the following command from the directory that contains the installation program:

```
$ ./openshift-install create ignition-configs --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- For `<installation_directory>`, specify the same installation directory.

The following files are generated in the directory:

```
.
├── auth
│   ├── kubeadmin-password
│   └── kubeconfig
├── bootstrap.ign
├── master.ign
├── metadata.json
└── worker.ign
```

- Export the metadata file's **infraID** key as an environment variable:

```
$ export INFRA_ID=$(jq -r .infraID metadata.json)
```

## TIP

Extract the **infraID** key from **metadata.json** and use it as a prefix for all of the RHOSP resources that you create. By doing so, you avoid name conflicts when making multiple deployments in the same project.

### 1.4.16. Preparing the bootstrap Ignition files

The OpenShift Container Platform installation process relies on bootstrap machines that are created from a bootstrap Ignition configuration file.

Edit the file and upload it. Then, create a secondary bootstrap Ignition configuration file that Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) uses to download the primary file.

## Prerequisites

- You have the bootstrap Ignition file that the installer program generates, **bootstrap.ign**.
- The infrastructure ID from the installer's metadata file is set as an environment variable (**\$INFRA\_ID**).
  - If the variable is not set, see **Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files**
- You have an HTTP(S)-accessible way to store the bootstrap Ignition file.
  - The documented procedure uses the RHOSP image service (Glance), but you can also use the RHOSP storage service (Swift), Amazon S3, an internal HTTP server, or an ad hoc Nova server.

## Procedure

1. Run the following Python script. The script modifies the bootstrap Ignition file to set the hostname and, if available, CA certificate file when it runs:

```
import base64
import json
import os

with open('bootstrap.ign', 'r') as f:
    ignition = json.load(f)

files = ignition['storage'].get('files', [])

infra_id = os.environ.get('INFRA_ID', 'openshift').encode()
hostname_b64 = base64.standard_b64encode(infra_id + b'-bootstrap\n').decode().strip()
files.append(
{
    'path': '/etc/hostname',
    'mode': 420,
    'contents': {
        'source': 'data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,' + hostname_b64
    }
})

ca_cert_path = os.environ.get('OS_CACERT', "")
if ca_cert_path:
    with open(ca_cert_path, 'r') as f:
        ca_cert = f.read().encode()
        ca_cert_b64 = base64.standard_b64encode(ca_cert).decode().strip()

files.append(
{
    'path': '/opt/openshift/tls/cloud-ca-cert.pem',
    'mode': 420,
```

```

        'contents': {
            'source': 'data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,' + ca_cert_b64
        }
    })

    ignition['storage']['files'] = files;

    with open('bootstrap.ign', 'w') as f:
        json.dump(ignition, f)

```

- Using the RHOSP CLI, create an image that uses the bootstrap ignition file:

```
$ openstack image create --disk-format=raw --container-format=bare --file bootstrap.ign
<image_name>
```

- Get the image's details:

```
$ openstack image show <image_name>
```

Make a note of the **file** value; it follows the pattern **v2/images/<image\_ID>/file**.



#### NOTE

Verify that the image you created is active.

- Retrieve the image service's public address:

```
$ openstack catalog show image
```

- Combine the public address with the image **file** value and save the result as the storage location. The location follows the pattern **<image\_service\_public\_URL>/v2/images/<image\_ID>/file**.

- Generate an auth token and save the token ID:

```
$ openstack token issue -c id -f value
```

- Insert the following content into a file called **\$INFRA\_ID-bootstrap-ignition.json** and edit the placeholders to match your own values:

```

{
  "ignition": {
    "config": {
      "merge": [{
        "source": "<storage_url>", 1
        "httpHeaders": [{
          "name": "X-Auth-Token", 2
          "value": "<token_ID>" 3
        }]
      }]
    },
    "security": {
      "tls": {

```

```

    "certificateAuthorities": [{
      "source": "data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,<base64_encoded_certificate>"
    }]
  },
  "version": "3.1.0"
}

```

- 1 Replace the value of **ignition.config.merge.source** with the bootstrap Ignition file storage URL.
- 2 Set **name** in **httpHeaders** to **"X-Auth-Token"**.
- 3 Set **value** in **httpHeaders** to your token's ID.
- 4 If the bootstrap Ignition file server uses a self-signed certificate, include the base64-encoded certificate.

8. Save the secondary Ignition config file.

The bootstrap Ignition data will be passed to RHOSP during installation.



#### WARNING

The bootstrap Ignition file contains sensitive information, like **clouds.yaml** credentials. Ensure that you store it in a secure place, and delete it after you complete the installation process.

### 1.4.17. Creating control plane Ignition config files on RHOSP

Installing OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) on your own infrastructure requires control plane Ignition config files. You must create multiple config files.



#### NOTE

As with the bootstrap Ignition configuration, you must explicitly define a hostname for each control plane machine.

#### Prerequisites

- The infrastructure ID from the installation program's metadata file is set as an environment variable (**\$INFRA\_ID**).
  - If the variable is not set, see "Creating the Kubernetes manifest and Ignition config files."

#### Procedure

- On a command line, run the following Python script:

■

```

$ for index in $(seq 0 2); do
  MASTER_HOSTNAME="$INFRA_ID-master-$index\n"
  python -c "import base64, json, sys;
  ignition = json.load(sys.stdin);
  storage = ignition.get('storage', {});
  files = storage.get('files', []);
  files.append({'path': '/etc/hostname', 'mode': 420, 'contents': {'source':
'data:text/plain;charset=utf-8;base64,' +
base64.standard_b64encode(b'$MASTER_HOSTNAME').decode().strip(), 'verification': {}},
'filesystem': 'root'});
  storage['files'] = files;
  ignition['storage'] = storage
  json.dump(ignition, sys.stdout) <master.ign >"$INFRA_ID-master-$index-ignition.json"
done

```

You now have three control plane Ignition files: **<INFRA\_ID>-master-0-ignition.json**, **<INFRA\_ID>-master-1-ignition.json**, and **<INFRA\_ID>-master-2-ignition.json**.

### 1.4.18. Creating network resources on RHOSP

Create the network resources that an OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) installation on your own infrastructure requires. To save time, run supplied Ansible playbooks that generate security groups, networks, subnets, routers, and ports.

#### Prerequisites

- Python 3 is installed on your machine.
- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."

#### Procedure

1. Optional: Add an external network value to the **inventory.yaml** playbook:

#### Example external network value in the **inventory.yaml** Ansible playbook

```

...
# The public network providing connectivity to the cluster. If not
# provided, the cluster external connectivity must be provided in another
# way.

# Required for os_api_fip, os_ingress_fip, os_bootstrap_fip.
os_external_network: 'external'
...

```



#### IMPORTANT

If you did not provide a value for **os\_external\_network** in the **inventory.yaml** file, you must ensure that VMs can access Glance and an external connection yourself.

- Optional: Add external network and floating IP (FIP) address values to the **inventory.yaml** playbook:

### Example FIP values in the **inventory.yaml** Ansible playbook

```
...
# OpenShift API floating IP address. If this value is non-empty, the
# corresponding floating IP will be attached to the Control Plane to
# serve the OpenShift API.
os_api_fip: '203.0.113.23'

# OpenShift Ingress floating IP address. If this value is non-empty, the
# corresponding floating IP will be attached to the worker nodes to serve
# the applications.
os_ingress_fip: '203.0.113.19'

# If this value is non-empty, the corresponding floating IP will be
# attached to the bootstrap machine. This is needed for collecting logs
# in case of install failure.
os_bootstrap_fip: '203.0.113.20'
```



### IMPORTANT

If you do not define values for **os\_api\_fip** and **os\_ingress\_fip**, you must perform post-installation network configuration.

If you do not define a value for **os\_bootstrap\_fip**, the installer cannot download debugging information from failed installations.

See "Enabling access to the environment" for more information.

- On a command line, create security groups by running the **security-groups.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml security-groups.yaml
```

- On a command line, create a network, subnet, and router by running the **network.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml network.yaml
```

- Optional: If you want to control the default resolvers that Nova servers use, run the RHOSP CLI command:

```
$ openstack subnet set --dns-nameserver <server_1> --dns-nameserver <server_2>
"$INFRA_ID-nodes"
```

## 1.4.19. Creating the bootstrap machine on RHOSP

Create a bootstrap machine and give it the network access it needs to run on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP). Red Hat provides an Ansible playbook that you run to simplify this process.

### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **bootstrap.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.
- The **metadata.json** file that the installation program created is in the same directory as the Ansible playbooks.

### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. On a command line, run the **bootstrap.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml bootstrap.yaml
```

3. After the bootstrap server is active, view the logs to verify that the Ignition files were received:

```
$ openstack console log show "$INFRA_ID-bootstrap"
```

## 1.4.20. Creating the control plane machines on RHOSP

Create three control plane machines by using the Ignition config files that you generated. Red Hat provides an Ansible playbook that you run to simplify this process.

### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The infrastructure ID from the installation program's metadata file is set as an environment variable (**\$INFRA\_ID**).
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **control-plane.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.
- You have the three Ignition files that were created in "Creating control plane Ignition config files."

### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. If the control plane Ignition config files aren't already in your working directory, copy them into it.
3. On a command line, run the **control-plane.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml control-plane.yaml
```

4. Run the following command to monitor the bootstrapping process:

■

```
$ openshift-install wait-for bootstrap-complete
```

You will see messages that confirm that the control plane machines are running and have joined the cluster:

```
INFO API v1.14.6+f9b5405 up
INFO Waiting up to 30m0s for bootstrapping to complete...
...
INFO It is now safe to remove the bootstrap resources
```

### 1.4.21. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI

You can log in to your cluster as a default system user by exporting the cluster **kubeconfig** file. The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server. The file is specific to a cluster and is created during OpenShift Container Platform installation.

#### Prerequisites

- You deployed an OpenShift Container Platform cluster.
- You installed the **oc** CLI.

#### Procedure

1. Export the **kubeadmin** credentials:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

2. Verify you can run **oc** commands successfully using the exported configuration:

```
$ oc whoami
```

#### Example output

```
system:admin
```

### 1.4.22. Deleting bootstrap resources from RHOSP

Delete the bootstrap resources that you no longer need.

#### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **down-bootstrap.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.

- The control plane machines are running.
  - If you do not know the status of the machines, see "Verifying cluster status."

### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. On a command line, run the **down-bootstrap.yaml** playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml down-bootstrap.yaml
```

The bootstrap port, server, and floating IP address are deleted.



### WARNING

If you did not disable the bootstrap Ignition file URL earlier, do so now.

## 1.4.23. Creating compute machines on RHOSP

After standing up the control plane, create compute machines. Red Hat provides an Ansible playbook that you run to simplify this process.

### Prerequisites

- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You downloaded the playbooks in "Downloading the installation playbooks."
- The **inventory.yaml**, **common.yaml**, and **compute-nodes.yaml** Ansible playbooks are in a common directory.
- The **metadata.json** file that the installation program created is in the same directory as the Ansible playbooks.
- The control plane is active.

### Procedure

1. On a command line, change the working directory to the location of the playbooks.
2. On a command line, run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml compute-nodes.yaml
```

### Next steps

- Approve the certificate signing requests for the machines.

## 1.4.24. Approving the certificate signing requests for your machines

When you add machines to a cluster, two pending certificate signing requests (CSRs) are generated for each machine that you added. You must confirm that these CSRs are approved or, if necessary, approve them yourself. The client requests must be approved first, followed by the server requests.

### Prerequisites

- You added machines to your cluster.

### Procedure

1. Confirm that the cluster recognizes the machines:

```
$ oc get nodes
```

#### Example output

```
NAME      STATUS   ROLES    AGE   VERSION
master-0  Ready   master   63m   v1.19.0
master-1  Ready   master   63m   v1.19.0
master-2  Ready   master   64m   v1.19.0
```

The output lists all of the machines that you created.



#### NOTE

The preceding output might not include the compute nodes, also known as worker nodes, until some CSRs are approved.

2. Review the pending CSRs and ensure that you see the client requests with the **Pending** or **Approved** status for each machine that you added to the cluster:

```
$ oc get csr
```

#### Example output

```
NAME      AGE   REQUESTOR                                     CONDITION
csr-8b2br  15m   system:serviceaccount:openshift-machine-config-operator:node-
bootstrapper  Pending
csr-8vnps  15m   system:serviceaccount:openshift-machine-config-operator:node-
bootstrapper  Pending
...
```

In this example, two machines are joining the cluster. You might see more approved CSRs in the list.

3. If the CSRs were not approved, after all of the pending CSRs for the machines you added are in **Pending** status, approve the CSRs for your cluster machines:

**NOTE**

Because the CSRs rotate automatically, approve your CSRs within an hour of adding the machines to the cluster. If you do not approve them within an hour, the certificates will rotate, and more than two certificates will be present for each node. You must approve all of these certificates. Once the client CSR is approved, the Kubelet creates a secondary CSR for the serving certificate, which requires manual approval. Then, subsequent serving certificate renewal requests are automatically approved by the **machine-approver** if the Kubelet requests a new certificate with identical parameters.

**NOTE**

For clusters running on platforms that are not machine API enabled, such as bare metal and other user-provisioned infrastructure, you must implement a method of automatically approving the kubelet serving certificate requests (CSRs). If a request is not approved, then the **oc exec**, **oc rsh**, and **oc logs** commands cannot succeed, because a serving certificate is required when the API server connects to the kubelet. Any operation that contacts the Kubelet endpoint requires this certificate approval to be in place. The method must watch for new CSRs, confirm that the CSR was submitted by the **node-bootstrap** service account in the **system:node** or **system:admin** groups, and confirm the identity of the node.

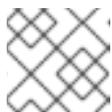
- To approve them individually, run the following command for each valid CSR:

```
$ oc adm certificate approve <csr_name> 1
```

- 1** **<csr\_name>** is the name of a CSR from the list of current CSRs.

- To approve all pending CSRs, run the following command:

```
$ oc get csr -o go-template='{{range .items}}{{if not .status}}{{.metadata.name}}{"\n"}{{end}}{{end}}' | xargs --no-run-if-empty oc adm certificate approve
```

**NOTE**

Some Operators might not become available until some CSRs are approved.

- Now that your client requests are approved, you must review the server requests for each machine that you added to the cluster:

```
$ oc get csr
```

**Example output**

```
NAME          AGE   REQUESTOR                                     CONDITION
csr-bfd72     5m26s system:node:ip-10-0-50-126.us-east-2.compute.internal
Pending
csr-c57lv     5m26s system:node:ip-10-0-95-157.us-east-2.compute.internal
Pending
...
```

5. If the remaining CSRs are not approved, and are in the **Pending** status, approve the CSRs for your cluster machines:

- To approve them individually, run the following command for each valid CSR:

```
$ oc adm certificate approve <csr_name> 1
```

**1** **<csr\_name>** is the name of a CSR from the list of current CSRs.

- To approve all pending CSRs, run the following command:

```
$ oc get csr -o go-template='{{range .items}}{{if not .status}}{{.metadata.name}}{\n"}\n{{end}}' | xargs oc adm certificate approve
```

6. After all client and server CSRs have been approved, the machines have the **Ready** status. Verify this by running the following command:

```
$ oc get nodes
```

### Example output

```
NAME      STATUS  ROLES  AGE  VERSION
master-0  Ready   master 73m  v1.20.0
master-1  Ready   master 73m  v1.20.0
master-2  Ready   master 74m  v1.20.0
worker-0  Ready   worker 11m  v1.20.0
worker-1  Ready   worker 11m  v1.20.0
```



### NOTE

It can take a few minutes after approval of the server CSRs for the machines to transition to the **Ready** status.

### Additional information

- For more information on CSRs, see [Certificate Signing Requests](#).

## 1.4.25. Verifying a successful installation

Verify that the OpenShift Container Platform installation is complete.

### Prerequisites

- You have the installation program (**openshift-install**)

### Procedure

- On a command line, enter:

```
$ openshift-install --log-level debug wait-for install-complete
```

The program outputs the console URL, as well as the administrator's login information.

## 1.4.26. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, the Telemetry service, which runs by default to provide metrics about cluster health and the success of updates, requires internet access. If your cluster is connected to the internet, Telemetry runs automatically, and your cluster is registered to [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#).

After you confirm that your [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) inventory is correct, either maintained automatically by Telemetry or manually by using OpenShift Cluster Manager, [use subscription watch](#) to track your OpenShift Container Platform subscriptions at the account or multi-cluster level.

### Additional resources

- See [About remote health monitoring](#) for more information about the Telemetry service

## 1.4.27. Next steps

- [Customize your cluster](#).
- If necessary, you can [opt out of remote health reporting](#).
- If you need to enable external access to node ports, [configure ingress cluster traffic by using a node port](#).
- If you did not configure RHOSP to accept application traffic over floating IP addresses, [configure RHOSP access with floating IP addresses](#).

## 1.5. INSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK IN A RESTRICTED NETWORK

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, you can install a cluster on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) in a restricted network by creating an internal mirror of the installation release content.



### NOTE

Installing in a restricted network is supported only for installer-provisioned installations.

### Prerequisites

- [Create a registry on your mirror host](#) and obtain the **imageContentSources** data for your version of OpenShift Container Platform.



### IMPORTANT

Because the installation media is on the mirror host, you can use that computer to complete all installation steps.

- Review details about the [OpenShift Container Platform installation and update processes](#).
  - Verify that OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 is compatible with your RHOSP version by consulting the architecture documentation's [list of available platforms](#). You can also compare platform support across different versions by viewing the [OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP support matrix](#).

- Verify that your network configuration does not rely on a provider network. Provider networks are not supported.
- Have the metadata service enabled in RHOSP.

### 1.5.1. About installations in restricted networks

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, you can perform an installation that does not require an active connection to the Internet to obtain software components. Restricted network installations can be completed using installer-provisioned infrastructure or user-provisioned infrastructure, depending on the cloud platform to which you are installing the cluster.

If you choose to perform a restricted network installation on a cloud platform, you still require access to its cloud APIs. Some cloud functions, like Amazon Web Service’s Route 53 DNS and IAM services, require internet access. Depending on your network, you might require less Internet access for an installation on bare metal hardware or on VMware vSphere.

To complete a restricted network installation, you must create a registry that mirrors the contents of the OpenShift Container Platform registry and contains the installation media. You can create this registry on a mirror host, which can access both the Internet and your closed network, or by using other methods that meet your restrictions.

#### 1.5.1.1. Additional limits

Clusters in restricted networks have the following additional limitations and restrictions:

- The **ClusterVersion** status includes an **Unable to retrieve available updates** error.
- By default, you cannot use the contents of the Developer Catalog because you cannot access the required image stream tags.

### 1.5.2. Resource guidelines for installing OpenShift Container Platform on RHOSP

To support an OpenShift Container Platform installation, your Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) quota must meet the following requirements:

**Table 1.25. Recommended resources for a default OpenShift Container Platform cluster on RHOSP**

Resource	Value
Floating IP addresses	3
Ports	15
Routers	1
Subnets	1
RAM	112 GB
vCPUs	28

Resource	Value
Volume storage	275 GB
Instances	7
Security groups	3
Security group rules	60

A cluster might function with fewer than recommended resources, but its performance is not guaranteed.



### IMPORTANT

If RHOSP object storage (Swift) is available and operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role, it is used as the default backend for the OpenShift Container Platform image registry. In this case, the volume storage requirement is 175 GB. Swift space requirements vary depending on the size of the image registry.



### NOTE

By default, your security group and security group rule quotas might be low. If you encounter problems, run **openstack quota set --secgroups 3 --secgroup-rules 60 <project>** as an administrator to increase them.

An OpenShift Container Platform deployment comprises control plane machines, compute machines, and a bootstrap machine.

#### 1.5.2.1. Control plane machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three control plane machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

#### 1.5.2.2. Compute machines

By default, the OpenShift Container Platform installation process creates three compute machines.

Each machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 8 GB memory, 2 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

## TIP

Compute machines host the applications that you run on OpenShift Container Platform; aim to run as many as you can.

### 1.5.2.3. Bootstrap machine

During installation, a bootstrap machine is temporarily provisioned to stand up the control plane. After the production control plane is ready, the bootstrap machine is deprovisioned.

The bootstrap machine requires:

- An instance from the RHOSP quota
- A port from the RHOSP quota
- A flavor with at least 16 GB memory, 4 vCPUs, and 100 GB storage space

### 1.5.3. Internet access for OpenShift Container Platform

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, you require access to the Internet to obtain the images that are necessary to install your cluster.

You must have Internet access to:

- Access [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) to download the installation program and perform subscription management. If the cluster has internet access and you do not disable Telemetry, that service automatically entitles your cluster.
- Access [Quay.io](#) to obtain the packages that are required to install your cluster.
- Obtain the packages that are required to perform cluster updates.

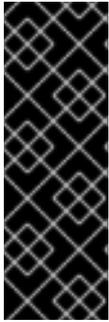


## IMPORTANT

If your cluster cannot have direct Internet access, you can perform a restricted network installation on some types of infrastructure that you provision. During that process, you download the content that is required and use it to populate a mirror registry with the packages that you need to install a cluster and generate the installation program. With some installation types, the environment that you install your cluster in will not require Internet access. Before you update the cluster, you update the content of the mirror registry.

### 1.5.4. Enabling Swift on RHOSP

Swift is operated by a user account with the **swiftoperator** role. Add the role to an account before you run the installation program.



## IMPORTANT

If the [Red Hat OpenStack Platform \(RHOSP\) object storage service](#), commonly known as Swift, is available, OpenShift Container Platform uses it as the image registry storage. If it is unavailable, the installation program relies on the RHOSP block storage service, commonly known as Cinder.

If Swift is present and you want to use it, you must enable access to it. If it is not present, or if you do not want to use it, skip this section.

### Prerequisites

- You have a RHOSP administrator account on the target environment.
- The Swift service is installed.
- On [Ceph RGW](#), the **account in url** option is enabled.

### Procedure

To enable Swift on RHOSP:

1. As an administrator in the RHOSP CLI, add the **swiftoperator** role to the account that will access Swift:

```
$ openstack role add --user <user> --project <project> swiftoperator
```

Your RHOSP deployment can now use Swift for the image registry.

## 1.5.5. Defining parameters for the installation program

The OpenShift Container Platform installation program relies on a file that is called **clouds.yaml**. The file describes Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters, including the project name, log in information, and authorization service URLs.

### Procedure

1. Create the **clouds.yaml** file:
  - If your RHOSP distribution includes the Horizon web UI, generate a **clouds.yaml** file in it.



## IMPORTANT

Remember to add a password to the **auth** field. You can also keep secrets in [a separate file](#) from **clouds.yaml**.

- If your RHOSP distribution does not include the Horizon web UI, or you do not want to use Horizon, create the file yourself. For detailed information about **clouds.yaml**, see [Config files](#) in the RHOSP documentation.

```
clouds:
  shiftstack:
    auth:
      auth_url: http://10.10.14.42:5000/v3
      project_name: shiftstack
```

```

username: shiftstack_user
password: XXX
user_domain_name: Default
project_domain_name: Default
dev-env:
region_name: RegionOne
auth:
  username: 'devuser'
  password: XXX
  project_name: 'devonly'
  auth_url: 'https://10.10.14.22:5001/v2.0'

```

2. If your RHOSP installation uses self-signed certificate authority (CA) certificates for endpoint authentication:

- a. Copy the certificate authority file to your machine.
- b. Add the machine to the certificate authority trust bundle:

```
$ sudo cp ca.crt.pem /etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/
```

- c. Update the trust bundle:

```
$ sudo update-ca-trust extract
```

- d. Add the **cacerts** key to the **clouds.yaml** file. The value must be an absolute, non-root-accessible path to the CA certificate:

```

clouds:
  shiftstack:
  ...
  cacert: "/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca.crt.pem"

```

### TIP

After you run the installer with a custom CA certificate, you can update the certificate by editing the value of the **ca-cert.pem** key in the **cloud-provider-config** keymap. On a command line, run:

```
$ oc edit configmap -n openshift-config cloud-provider-config
```

3. Place the **clouds.yaml** file in one of the following locations:
  - a. The value of the **OS\_CLIENT\_CONFIG\_FILE** environment variable
  - b. The current directory
  - c. A Unix-specific user configuration directory, for example **~/.config/openstack/clouds.yaml**
  - d. A Unix-specific site configuration directory, for example **/etc/openstack/clouds.yaml**  
The installation program searches for **clouds.yaml** in that order.

## 1.5.6. Creating the RHCOS image for restricted network installations

Download the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image to install OpenShift Container Platform on a restricted network Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) environment.

## Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program. For a restricted network installation, the program is on your mirror registry host.

## Procedure

1. Log in to the Red Hat Customer Portal's [Product Downloads page](#).
2. Under **Version**, select the most recent release of OpenShift Container Platform 4.6 for RHEL 8.



### IMPORTANT

The RHCOS images might not change with every release of OpenShift Container Platform. You must download images with the highest version that is less than or equal to the OpenShift Container Platform version that you install. Use the image versions that match your OpenShift Container Platform version if they are available.

3. Download the **Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) - OpenStack Image (QCOW)** image.
4. Decompress the image.



### NOTE

You must decompress the image before the cluster can use it. The name of the downloaded file might not contain a compression extension, like **.gz** or **.tgz**. To find out if or how the file is compressed, in a command line, enter:

```
$ file <name_of_downloaded_file>
```

5. Upload the image that you decompressed to a location that is accessible from the bastion server, like Glance. For example:

```
$ openstack image create --file rhcos-44.81.202003110027-0-openstack.x86_64.qcow2 --disk-format qcow2 rhcos-${RHCOS_VERSION}
```



### IMPORTANT

Depending on your RHOSP environment, you might be able to upload the image in either **.raw** or **.qcow2** formats. If you use Ceph, you must use the **.raw** format.

**WARNING**

If the installation program finds multiple images with the same name, it chooses one of them at random. To avoid this behavior, create unique names for resources in RHOSP.

The image is now available for a restricted installation. Note the image name or location for use in OpenShift Container Platform deployment.

### 1.5.7. Creating the installation configuration file

You can customize the OpenShift Container Platform cluster you install on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

#### Prerequisites

- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster. For a restricted network installation, these files are on your mirror host.
- Have the **imageContentSources** values that were generated during mirror registry creation.
- Obtain the contents of the certificate for your mirror registry.
- Retrieve a Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) image and upload it to an accessible location.

#### Procedure

1. Create the **install-config.yaml** file.
  - a. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and run the following command:

```
$ ./openshift-install create install-config --dir <installation_directory> 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the directory name to store the files that the installation program creates.

**IMPORTANT**

Specify an empty directory. Some installation assets, like bootstrap X.509 certificates have short expiration intervals, so you must not reuse an installation directory. If you want to reuse individual files from another cluster installation, you can copy them into your directory. However, the file names for the installation assets might change between releases. Use caution when copying installation files from an earlier OpenShift Container Platform version.

- b. At the prompts, provide the configuration details for your cloud:

- i. Optional: Select an SSH key to use to access your cluster machines.



#### NOTE

For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your **ssh-agent** process uses.

- ii. Select **openstack** as the platform to target.
  - iii. Specify the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) external network name to use for installing the cluster.
  - iv. Specify the floating IP address to use for external access to the OpenShift API.
  - v. Specify a RHOSP flavor with at least 16 GB RAM to use for control plane and compute nodes.
  - vi. Select the base domain to deploy the cluster to. All DNS records will be sub-domains of this base and will also include the cluster name.
  - vii. Enter a name for your cluster. The name must be 14 or fewer characters long.
  - viii. Paste the [pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) .
2. In the **install-config.yaml** file, set the value of **platform.openstack.clusterOSImage** to the image location or name. For example:

```
platform:
  openstack:
    clusterOSImage: http://mirror.example.com/images/rhcos-43.81.201912131630.0-
    openstack.x86_64.qcow2.gz?
    sha256=ffebbd68e8a1f2a245ca19522c16c86f67f9ac8e4e0c1f0a812b068b16f7265d
```

3. Edit the **install-config.yaml** file to provide the additional information that is required for an installation in a restricted network.
  - a. Update the **pullSecret** value to contain the authentication information for your registry:

```
pullSecret: '{"auths":{"<mirror_host_name>:5000": {"auth": "<credentials>","email":
"you@example.com"}}}'
```

For **<mirror\_host\_name>**, specify the registry domain name that you specified in the certificate for your mirror registry, and for **<credentials>**, specify the base64-encoded user name and password for your mirror registry.

- b. Add the **additionalTrustBundle** parameter and value.

```
additionalTrustBundle: |
  -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
  /-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

The value must be the contents of the certificate file that you used for your mirror registry, which can be an existing, trusted certificate authority or the self-signed certificate that you generated for the mirror registry.

- c. Add the image content resources, which look like this excerpt:

```
imageContentSources:
- mirrors:
  - <mirror_host_name>:5000/<repo_name>/release
    source: quay.example.com/openshift-release-dev/ocp-release
- mirrors:
  - <mirror_host_name>:5000/<repo_name>/release
    source: registry.example.com/ocp/release
```

To complete these values, use the **imageContentSources** that you recorded during mirror registry creation.

4. Make any other modifications to the **install-config.yaml** file that you require. You can find more information about the available parameters in the **Installation configuration parameters** section.
5. Back up the **install-config.yaml** file so that you can use it to install multiple clusters.



### IMPORTANT

The **install-config.yaml** file is consumed during the installation process. If you want to reuse the file, you must back it up now.

#### 1.5.7.1. Configuring the cluster-wide proxy during installation

Production environments can deny direct access to the Internet and instead have an HTTP or HTTPS proxy available. You can configure a new OpenShift Container Platform cluster to use a proxy by configuring the proxy settings in the **install-config.yaml** file.

#### Prerequisites

- You have an existing **install-config.yaml** file.
- You reviewed the sites that your cluster requires access to and determined whether any of them need to bypass the proxy. By default, all cluster egress traffic is proxied, including calls to hosting cloud provider APIs. You added sites to the **Proxy** object's **spec.noProxy** field to bypass the proxy if necessary.



### NOTE

The **Proxy** object **status.noProxy** field is populated with the values of the **networking.machineNetwork[].cidr**, **networking.clusterNetwork[].cidr**, and **networking.serviceNetwork[]** fields from your installation configuration.

For installations on Amazon Web Services (AWS), Google Cloud Platform (GCP), Microsoft Azure, and Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP), the **Proxy** object **status.noProxy** field is also populated with the instance metadata endpoint (**169.254.169.254**).

#### Procedure

1. Edit your **install-config.yaml** file and add the proxy settings. For example:

```

apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: my.domain.com
proxy:
  httpProxy: http://<username>:<pswd>@<ip>:<port> 1
  httpsProxy: https://<username>:<pswd>@<ip>:<port> 2
  noProxy: example.com 3
additionalTrustBundle: | 4
  -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
  <MY_TRUSTED_CA_CERT>
  -----END CERTIFICATE-----
...

```

- 1 A proxy URL to use for creating HTTP connections outside the cluster. The URL scheme must be **http**.
- 2 A proxy URL to use for creating HTTPS connections outside the cluster.
- 3 A comma-separated list of destination domain names, IP addresses, or other network CIDRs to exclude from proxying. Preface a domain with **.** to match subdomains only. For example, **.y.com** matches **x.y.com**, but not **y.com**. Use **\*** to bypass the proxy for all destinations.
- 4 If provided, the installation program generates a config map that is named **user-ca-bundle** in the **openshift-config** namespace to hold the additional CA certificates. If you provide **additionalTrustBundle** and at least one proxy setting, the **Proxy** object is configured to reference the **user-ca-bundle** config map in the **trustedCA** field. The Cluster Network Operator then creates a **trusted-ca-bundle** config map that merges the contents specified for the **trustedCA** parameter with the RHCOS trust bundle. The **additionalTrustBundle** field is required unless the proxy's identity certificate is signed by an authority from the RHCOS trust bundle.

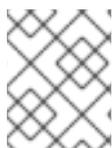


#### NOTE

The installation program does not support the proxy **readinessEndpoints** field.

2. Save the file and reference it when installing OpenShift Container Platform.

The installation program creates a cluster-wide proxy that is named **cluster** that uses the proxy settings in the provided **install-config.yaml** file. If no proxy settings are provided, a **cluster Proxy** object is still created, but it will have a nil **spec**.



#### NOTE

Only the **Proxy** object named **cluster** is supported, and no additional proxies can be created.

### 1.5.7.2. Installation configuration parameters

Before you deploy an OpenShift Container Platform cluster, you provide parameter values to describe your account on the cloud platform that hosts your cluster and optionally customize your cluster's platform. When you create the **install-config.yaml** installation configuration file, you provide values for

the required parameters through the command line. If you customize your cluster, you can modify the **install-config.yaml** file to provide more details about the platform.



#### NOTE

After installation, you cannot modify these parameters in the **install-config.yaml** file.



#### IMPORTANT

The **openshift-install** command does not validate field names for parameters. If an incorrect name is specified, the related file or object is not created, and no error is reported. Ensure that the field names for any parameters that are specified are correct.

### 1.5.7.2.1. Required configuration parameters

Required installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.26. Required parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>apiVersion</b>	The API version for the <b>install-config.yaml</b> content. The current version is <b>v1</b> . The installer may also support older API versions.	String
<b>baseDomain</b>	The base domain of your cloud provider. The base domain is used to create routes to your OpenShift Container Platform cluster components. The full DNS name for your cluster is a combination of the <b>baseDomain</b> and <b>metadata.name</b> parameter values that uses the <b>&lt;metadata.name&gt;</b> . <b>&lt;baseDomain&gt;</b> format.	A fully-qualified domain or subdomain name, such as <b>example.com</b> .
<b>metadata</b>	Kubernetes resource <b>ObjectMeta</b> , from which only the <b>name</b> parameter is consumed.	Object
<b>metadata.name</b>	The name of the cluster. DNS records for the cluster are all subdomains of <b>{{.metadata.name}}</b> . <b>{{.baseDomain}}</b> .	String of lowercase letters, hyphens (-), and periods (.), such as <b>dev</b> . The string must be 14 characters or fewer long.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform</b>	The configuration for the specific platform upon which to perform the installation: <b>aws, baremetal, azure, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> . For additional information about <b>platform.&lt;platform&gt;</b> parameters, consult the following table for your specific platform.	Object
<b>pullSecret</b>	Get a <a href="#">pull secret from the Red Hat OpenShift Cluster Manager</a> to authenticate downloading container images for OpenShift Container Platform components from services such as Quay.io.	<pre>{   "auths":{     "cloud.openshift.com":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     },     "quay.io":{       "auth":"b3Blb=",       "email":"you@example.com"     }   } }</pre>

#### 1.5.7.2.2. Network configuration parameters

You can customize your installation configuration based on the requirements of your existing network infrastructure. For example, you can expand the IP address block for the cluster network or provide different IP address blocks than the defaults.

Only IPv4 addresses are supported.

**Table 1.27. Network parameters**

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking</b>	The configuration for the cluster network.	<p>Object</p>  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>You cannot modify parameters specified by the <b>networking</b> object after installation.</p>

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking.networkType</b>	The cluster network provider Container Network Interface (CNI) plug-in to install.	Either <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> or <b>OVNKubernetes</b> . The default value is <b>OpenShiftSDN</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for pods.  The default value is <b>10.128.0.0/14</b> with a host prefix of <b>/23</b> .  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   clusterNetwork:     - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14       hostPrefix: 23</pre>
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.clusterNetwork</b> . An IP address block.  An IPv4 network.	An IP address block in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) notation. The prefix length for an IPv4 block is between <b>0</b> and <b>32</b> .
<b>networking.clusterNetwork.hostPrefix</b>	The subnet prefix length to assign to each individual node. For example, if <b>hostPrefix</b> is set to <b>23</b> then each node is assigned a <b>/23</b> subnet out of the given <b>cidr</b> . A <b>hostPrefix</b> value of <b>23</b> provides 510 ( $2^{(32 - 23)} - 2$ ) pod IP addresses.	A subnet prefix.  The default value is <b>23</b> .
<b>networking.serviceNetwork</b>	The IP address block for services. The default value is <b>172.30.0.0/16</b> .  The OpenShift SDN and OVN-Kubernetes network providers support only a single IP address block for the service network.	An array with an IP address block in CIDR format. For example:  <pre>networking:   serviceNetwork:     - 172.30.0.0/16</pre>
<b>networking.machineNetwork</b>	The IP address blocks for machines.  If you specify multiple IP address blocks, the blocks must not overlap.	An array of objects. For example:  <pre>networking:   machineNetwork:     - cidr: 10.0.0.0/16</pre>

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>networking.machineNetwork.cidr</b>	Required if you use <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> . An IP address block. The default value is <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> for all platforms other than libvirt. For libvirt, the default value is <b>192.168.126.0/24</b> .	An IP network block in CIDR notation. For example, <b>10.0.0.0/16</b> .  <b>NOTE</b> Set the <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> to match the CIDR that the preferred NIC resides in.

### 1.5.7.2.3. Optional configuration parameters

Optional installation configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.28. Optional parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>additionalTrustBundle</b>	A PEM-encoded X.509 certificate bundle that is added to the nodes' trusted certificate store. This trust bundle may also be used when a proxy has been configured.	String
<b>compute</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the compute nodes.	Array of machine-pool objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.
<b>compute.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.hyperthreading</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b>, on compute machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.</p> </div> </div>	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>compute.name</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>worker</b>
<b>compute.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>compute</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider to host the worker machines. This parameter value must match the <b>controlPlane.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere</b> , or <b>{}</b>
<b>compute.replicas</b>	The number of compute machines, which are also known as worker machines, to provision.	A positive integer greater than or equal to <b>2</b> . The default value is <b>3</b> .
<b>controlPlane</b>	The configuration for the machines that comprise the control plane.	Array of <b>MachinePool</b> objects. For details, see the following "Machine-pool" table.
<b>controlPlane.architecture</b>	Determines the instruction set architecture of the machines in the pool. Currently, heterogeneous clusters are not supported, so all pools must specify the same architecture. Valid values are <b>amd64</b> (the default).	String

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane.hyperthreading</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable simultaneous multithreading, or <b>hyperthreading</b>, on control plane machines. By default, simultaneous multithreading is enabled to increase the performance of your machines' cores.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If you disable simultaneous multithreading, ensure that your capacity planning accounts for the dramatically decreased machine performance.</p> </div> </div>	<b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b>
<b>controlPlane.name</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . The name of the machine pool.	<b>master</b>
<b>controlPlane.platform</b>	Required if you use <b>controlPlane</b> . Use this parameter to specify the cloud provider that hosts the control plane machines. This parameter value must match the <b>compute.platform</b> parameter value.	<b>aws, azure, gcp, openstack, ovirt, vsphere, or {}</b>
<b>controlPlane.replicas</b>	The number of control plane machines to provision.	The only supported value is <b>3</b> , which is the default value.

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>credentialsMode</b>	<p>The Cloud Credential Operator (CCO) mode. If no mode is specified, the CCO dynamically tries to determine the capabilities of the provided credentials, with a preference for mint mode on the platforms where multiple modes are supported.</p>  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Not all CCO modes are supported for all cloud providers. For more information on CCO modes, see the <i>Cloud Credential Operator</i> entry in the <i>Red Hat Operators reference</i> content.</p>	<b>Mint, Passthrough, Manual</b> , or an empty string ("").

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>fips</b>	<p>Enable or disable FIPS mode. The default is <b>false</b> (disabled). If FIPS mode is enabled, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) machines that OpenShift Container Platform runs on bypass the default Kubernetes cryptography suite and use the cryptography modules that are provided with RHCOS instead.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="width: 60px; height: 60px; background: repeating-linear-gradient(45deg, transparent, transparent 2px, black 2px, black 4px); margin-right: 10px;"></div> <div> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>The use of FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries is only supported on OpenShift Container Platform deployments on the <b>x86_64</b> architecture.</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="width: 60px; height: 60px; background: repeating-linear-gradient(-45deg, transparent, transparent 2px, black 2px, black 4px); margin-right: 10px;"></div> <div> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>If you are using Azure File storage, you cannot enable FIPS mode.</p> </div> </div>	<b>false</b> or <b>true</b>
<b>imageContentSources</b>	Sources and repositories for the release-image content.	Array of objects. Includes a <b>source</b> and, optionally, <b>mirrors</b> , as described in the following rows of this table.
<b>imageContentSources.source</b>	Required if you use <b>imageContentSources</b> . Specify the repository that users refer to, for example, in image pull specifications.	String
<b>imageContentSources.mirrors</b>	Specify one or more repositories that may also contain the same images.	Array of strings

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>publish</b>	How to publish or expose the user-facing endpoints of your cluster, such as the Kubernetes API, OpenShift routes.	<p><b>Internal</b> or <b>External</b>. The default value is <b>External</b>.</p> <p>Setting this field to <b>Internal</b> is not supported on non-cloud platforms.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b></p> <p>If the value of the field is set to <b>Internal</b>, the cluster will become non-functional. For more information, refer to <a href="#">BZ#1953035</a>.</p> </div> </div>
<b>sshKey</b>	<p>The SSH key or keys to authenticate access your cluster machines.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>For production OpenShift Container Platform clusters on which you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery, specify an SSH key that your <b>ssh-agent</b> process uses.</p> </div> </div>	<p>One or more keys. For example:</p> <pre>sshKey:   &lt;key1&gt;   &lt;key2&gt;   &lt;key3&gt;</pre>

#### 1.5.7.2.4. Additional Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) configuration parameters

Additional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.29. Additional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For compute machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For compute machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.size</b>	For control plane machines, the size in gigabytes of the root volume. If you do not set this value, machines use ephemeral storage.	Integer, for example <b>30</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.rootVolume.type</b>	For control plane machines, the root volume's type.	String, for example <b>performance</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.cloud</b>	The name of the RHOSP cloud to use from the list of clouds in the <b>clouds.yaml</b> file.	String, for example <b>MyCloud</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b>	The RHOSP external network name to be used for installation.	String, for example <b>external</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.computeFlavor</b>	The RHOSP flavor to use for control plane and compute machines.	String, for example <b>m1.xlarge</b> .

#### 1.5.7.2.5. Optional RHOSP configuration parameters

Optional RHOSP configuration parameters are described in the following table:

Table 1.30. Optional RHOSP parameters

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with compute machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>compute.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with compute machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>compute.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalNetworkIDs</b>	Additional networks that are associated with control plane machines. Allowed address pairs are not created for additional networks.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.additionalSecurityGroupIDs</b>	Additional security groups that are associated with control plane machines.	A list of one or more UUIDs as strings. For example, <b>7ee219f3-d2e9-48a1-96c2-e7429f1b0da7</b> .
<b>controlPlane.platform.openstack.zones</b>	<p>RHOSP Compute (Nova) availability zones (AZs) to install machines on. If this parameter is not set, the installer relies on the default settings for Nova that the RHOSP administrator configured.</p> <p>On clusters that use Kuryr, RHOSP Octavia does not support availability zones. Load balancers and, if you are using the Amphora provider driver, OpenShift Container Platform services that rely on Amphora VMs, are not created according to the value of this property.</p>	A list of strings. For example, <b>["zone-1", "zone-2"]</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.clusterOSImage</b>	<p>The location from which the installer downloads the RHCOS image.</p> <p>You must set this parameter to perform an installation in a restricted network.</p>	<p>An HTTP or HTTPS URL, optionally with an SHA-256 checksum.</p> <p>For example,  <b>http://mirror.example.com/images/rhcos-43.81.201912131630.0-openstack.x86_64.qcow2.gz?sha256=ffebbd68e8a1f2a245ca19522c16c86f67f9ac8e4e0c1f0a812b068b16f7265d</b>. The value can also be the name of an existing Glance image, for example <b>my-rhcos</b>.</p>
<b>platform.openstack.defaultMachinePlatform</b>	The default machine pool platform configuration.	<pre>{   "type": "ml.large",   "rootVolume": {     "size": 30,     "type": "performance"   } }</pre>
<b>platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP</b>	<p>An existing floating IP address to associate with the Ingress port. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.</p>	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP</b>	<p>An existing floating IP address to associate with the API load balancer. To use this property, you must also define the <b>platform.openstack.externalNetwork</b> property.</p>	An IP address, for example <b>128.0.0.1</b> .
<b>platform.openstack.externalDNS</b>	IP addresses for external DNS servers that cluster instances use for DNS resolution.	A list of IP addresses as strings. For example, <b>["8.8.8.8", "192.168.1.12"]</b> .

Parameter	Description	Values
<b>platform.openstack.machinesSubnet</b>	<p>The UUID of a RHOSP subnet that the cluster's nodes use. Nodes and virtual IP (VIP) ports are created on this subnet.</p> <p>The first item in <b>networking.machineNetwork</b> must match the value of <b>machinesSubnet</b>.</p> <p>If you deploy to a custom subnet, you cannot specify an external DNS server to the OpenShift Container Platform installer. Instead, <a href="#">add DNS to the subnet in RHOSP</a>.</p>	A UUID as a string. For example, <b>fa806b2f-ac49-4bce-b9db-124bc64209bf</b> .

### 1.5.7.3. Sample customized `install-config.yaml` file for restricted OpenStack installations

This sample `install-config.yaml` demonstrates all of the possible Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) customization options.



#### IMPORTANT

This sample file is provided for reference only. You must obtain your `install-config.yaml` file by using the installation program.

```

apiVersion: v1
baseDomain: example.com
clusterID: os-test
controlPlane:
  name: master
  platform: {}
  replicas: 3
compute:
- name: worker
  platform:
    openstack:
      type: ml.large
  replicas: 3
metadata:
  name: example
networking:
  clusterNetwork:
  - cidr: 10.128.0.0/14
    hostPrefix: 23
  machineCIDR: 10.0.0.0/16
  serviceNetwork:
  - 172.30.0.0/16
  networkType: OpenShiftSDN

```

```

platform:
  openstack:
    region: region1
    cloud: mycloud
    externalNetwork: external
    computeFlavor: m1.xlarge
    lbFloatingIP: 128.0.0.1
  fips: false
  pullSecret: '{"auths": ...}'
  sshKey: ssh-ed25519 AAAA...
  additionalTrustBundle: |

  -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

  /-----END CERTIFICATE-----

imageContentSources:
- mirrors:
  - <mirror_registry>/<repo_name>/release
  source: quay.io/openshift-release-dev/ocp-release
- mirrors:
  - <mirror_registry>/<repo_name>/release
  source: quay.io/openshift-release-dev/ocp-v4.0-art-dev

```

### 1.5.8. Setting compute machine affinity

Optionally, you can set the affinity policy for compute machines during installation. The installer does not select an affinity policy for compute machines by default.

You can also create machine sets that use particular RHOSP server groups after installation.



#### NOTE

Control plane machines are created with a **soft-anti-affinity** policy.

#### TIP

You can learn more about [RHOSP instance scheduling and placement](#) in the RHOSP documentation.

#### Prerequisites

- Create the **install-config.yaml** file and complete any modifications to it.

#### Procedure

1. Using the RHOSP command-line interface, create a server group for your compute machines. For example:

```

$ openstack \
  --os-compute-api-version=2.15 \
  server group create \

```

```
--policy anti-affinity \
my-openshift-worker-group
```

For more information, see the [server group create command documentation](#).

2. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and create the manifests:

```
$ ./openshift-install create manifests --dir=<installation_directory>
```

where:

### installation\_directory

Specifies the name of the directory that contains the **install-config.yaml** file for your cluster.

3. Open **manifests/99\_openshift-cluster-api\_worker-machineset-0.yaml**, the **MachineSet** definition file.
4. Add the property **serverGroupID** to the definition beneath the **spec.template.spec.providerSpec.value** property. For example:

```
apiVersion: machine.openshift.io/v1beta1
kind: MachineSet
metadata:
  labels:
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-role: <node_role>
    machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-type: <node_role>
  name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
  namespace: openshift-machine-api
spec:
  replicas: <number_of_replicas>
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
      machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machineset: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-cluster: <infrastructure_ID>
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-role: <node_role>
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-type: <node_role>
        machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machineset: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
    spec:
      providerSpec:
        value:
          apiVersion: openstackproviderconfig.openshift.io/v1alpha1
          cloudName: openstack
          cloudsSecret:
            name: openstack-cloud-credentials
            namespace: openshift-machine-api
          flavor: <nova_flavor>
          image: <glance_image_name_or_location>
          serverGroupID: aaaaaaaa-bbbb-cccc-dddd-eeeeeeeeeeee 1
          kind: OpenstackProviderSpec
```

```

networks:
- filter: {}
  subnets:
  - filter:
    name: <subnet_name>
    tags: openshiftClusterID=<infrastructure_ID>
securityGroups:
- filter: {}
  name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
serverMetadata:
  Name: <infrastructure_ID>-<node_role>
  openshiftClusterID: <infrastructure_ID>
tags:
- openshiftClusterID=<infrastructure_ID>
trunk: true
userDataSecret:
  name: <node_role>-user-data
availabilityZone: <optional_openstack_availability_zone>

```

1 Add the UUID of your server group here.

- Optional: Back up the **manifests/99\_openshift-cluster-api\_worker-machineset-0.yaml** file. The installation program deletes the **manifests/** directory when creating the cluster.

When you install the cluster, the installer uses the **MachineSet** definition that you modified to create compute machines within your RHOSP server group.

### 1.5.9. Generating an SSH private key and adding it to the agent

If you want to perform installation debugging or disaster recovery on your cluster, you must provide an SSH key to both your **ssh-agent** and the installation program. You can use this key to access the bootstrap machine in a public cluster to troubleshoot installation issues.



#### NOTE

In a production environment, you require disaster recovery and debugging.

You can use this key to SSH into the master nodes as the user **core**. When you deploy the cluster, the key is added to the **core** user's **~/.ssh/authorized\_keys** list.



#### NOTE

You must use a local key, not one that you configured with platform-specific approaches such as [AWS key pairs](#).

#### Procedure

- If you do not have an SSH key that is configured for password-less authentication on your computer, create one. For example, on a computer that uses a Linux operating system, run the following command:

```

$ ssh-keygen -t ed25519 -N "" \
-f <path>/<file_name> 1

```

- 1 Specify the path and file name, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`, of the new SSH key. If you have an existing key pair, ensure your public key is in the your `~/.ssh` directory.

Running this command generates an SSH key that does not require a password in the location that you specified.



#### NOTE

If you plan to install an OpenShift Container Platform cluster that uses FIPS Validated / Modules in Process cryptographic libraries on the **x86\_64** architecture, do not create a key that uses the **ed25519** algorithm. Instead, create a key that uses the **rsa** or **ecdsa** algorithm.

2. Start the **ssh-agent** process as a background task:

```
$ eval "$(ssh-agent -s)"
```

#### Example output

```
Agent pid 31874
```



#### NOTE

If your cluster is in FIPS mode, only use FIPS-compliant algorithms to generate the SSH key. The key must be either RSA or ECDSA.

3. Add your SSH private key to the **ssh-agent**:

```
$ ssh-add <path>/<file_name> 1
```

#### Example output

```
Identity added: /home/<you>/<path>/<file_name> (<computer_name>)
```

- 1 Specify the path and file name for your SSH private key, such as `~/.ssh/id_rsa`

#### Next steps

- When you install OpenShift Container Platform, provide the SSH public key to the installation program.

### 1.5.10. Enabling access to the environment

At deployment, all OpenShift Container Platform machines are created in a Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP)-tenant network. Therefore, they are not accessible directly in most RHOSP deployments.

You can configure OpenShift Container Platform API and application access by using floating IP addresses (FIPs) during installation. You can also complete an installation without configuring FIPs, but the installer will not configure a way to reach the API or applications externally.

### 1.5.10.1. Enabling access with floating IP addresses

Create floating IP (FIP) addresses for external access to the OpenShift Container Platform API and cluster applications.

#### Procedure

1. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the API FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "API <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"
<external_network>
```

2. Using the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) CLI, create the apps, or Ingress, FIP:

```
$ openstack floating ip create --description "Ingress <cluster_name>.<base_domain>"
<external_network>
```

3. Add records that follow these patterns to your DNS server for the API and Ingress FIPs:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <API_FIP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <apps_FIP>
```

#### NOTE

If you do not control the DNS server, you can access the cluster by adding the cluster domain names such as the following to your **/etc/hosts** file:

- **<api\_floating\_ip> api.<cluster\_name>.<base\_domain>**
- **<application\_floating\_ip> grafana-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster\_name>.<base\_domain>**
- **<application\_floating\_ip> prometheus-k8s-openshift-monitoring.apps.<cluster\_name>.<base\_domain>**
- **<application\_floating\_ip> oauth-openshift.apps.<cluster\_name>.<base\_domain>**
- **<application\_floating\_ip> console-openshift-console.apps.<cluster\_name>.<base\_domain>**
- **application\_floating\_ip integrated-oauth-server-openshift-authentication.apps.<cluster\_name>.<base\_domain>**

The cluster domain names in the **/etc/hosts** file grant access to the web console and the monitoring interface of your cluster locally. You can also use the **kubectl** or **oc**. You can access the user applications by using the additional entries pointing to the **<application\_floating\_ip>**. This action makes the API and applications accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment, but does allow installation for development and testing.

4. Add the FIPs to the **install-config.yaml** file as the values of the following parameters:

- **platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP**

- **platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP**

If you use these values, you must also enter an external network as the value of the **platform.openstack.externalNetwork** parameter in the **install-config.yaml** file.

## TIP

You can make OpenShift Container Platform resources available outside of the cluster by assigning a floating IP address and updating your firewall configuration.

### 1.5.10.2. Completing installation without floating IP addresses

You can install OpenShift Container Platform on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) without providing floating IP addresses.

In the **install-config.yaml** file, do not define the following parameters:

- **platform.openstack.ingressFloatingIP**
- **platform.openstack.lbFloatingIP**

If you cannot provide an external network, you can also leave **platform.openstack.externalNetwork** blank. If you do not provide a value for **platform.openstack.externalNetwork**, a router is not created for you, and, without additional action, the installer will fail to retrieve an image from Glance. You must configure external connectivity on your own.

If you run the installer from a system that cannot reach the cluster API due to a lack of floating IP addresses or name resolution, installation fails. To prevent installation failure in these cases, you can use a proxy network or run the installer from a system that is on the same network as your machines.



## NOTE

You can enable name resolution by creating DNS records for the API and Ingress ports. For example:

```
api.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <api_port_IP>
*.apps.<cluster_name>.<base_domain>. IN A <ingress_port_IP>
```

If you do not control the DNS server, you can add the record to your **/etc/hosts** file. This action makes the API accessible to only you, which is not suitable for production deployment but does allow installation for development and testing.

### 1.5.11. Deploying the cluster

You can install OpenShift Container Platform on a compatible cloud platform.



## IMPORTANT

You can run the **create cluster** command of the installation program only once, during initial installation.

## Prerequisites

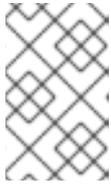
- Obtain the OpenShift Container Platform installation program and the pull secret for your cluster.

## Procedure

1. Change to the directory that contains the installation program and initialize the cluster deployment:

```
$ ./openshift-install create cluster --dir <installation_directory> \ 1
--log-level=info 2
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the location of your customized **./install-config.yaml** file.
- 2** To view different installation details, specify **warn**, **debug**, or **error** instead of **info**.



### NOTE

If the cloud provider account that you configured on your host does not have sufficient permissions to deploy the cluster, the installation process stops, and the missing permissions are displayed.

When the cluster deployment completes, directions for accessing your cluster, including a link to its web console and credentials for the **kubeadmin** user, display in your terminal.

## Example output

```
...
INFO Install complete!
INFO To access the cluster as the system:admin user when using 'oc', run 'export
KUBECONFIG=/home/myuser/install_dir/auth/kubeconfig'
INFO Access the OpenShift web-console here: https://console-openshift-
console.apps.mycluster.example.com
INFO Login to the console with user: "kubeadmin", and password: "4vYBz-Ee6gm-ymBZj-
Wt5AL"
INFO Time elapsed: 36m22s
```



### NOTE

The cluster access and credential information also outputs to **<installation\_directory>/openshift\_install.log** when an installation succeeds.



## IMPORTANT

- The Ignition config files that the installation program generates contain certificates that expire after 24 hours, which are then renewed at that time. If the cluster is shut down before renewing the certificates and the cluster is later restarted after the 24 hours have elapsed, the cluster automatically recovers the expired certificates. The exception is that you must manually approve the pending **node-bootstrapper** certificate signing requests (CSRs) to recover kubelet certificates. See the documentation for *Recovering from expired control plane certificates* for more information.
- It is recommended that you use Ignition config files within 12 hours after they are generated because the 24-hour certificate rotates from 16 to 22 hours after the cluster is installed. By using the Ignition config files within 12 hours, you can avoid installation failure if the certificate update runs during installation.



## IMPORTANT

You must not delete the installation program or the files that the installation program creates. Both are required to delete the cluster.

### 1.5.12. Verifying cluster status

You can verify your OpenShift Container Platform cluster's status during or after installation.

#### Procedure

1. In the cluster environment, export the administrator's kubeconfig file:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server.

2. View the control plane and compute machines created after a deployment:

```
$ oc get nodes
```

3. View your cluster's version:

```
$ oc get clusterversion
```

4. View your Operators' status:

```
$ oc get clusteroperator
```

5. View all running pods in the cluster:

```
$ oc get pods -A
```

### 1.5.13. Logging in to the cluster by using the CLI

You can log in to your cluster as a default system user by exporting the cluster **kubeconfig** file. The **kubeconfig** file contains information about the cluster that is used by the CLI to connect a client to the correct cluster and API server. The file is specific to a cluster and is created during OpenShift Container Platform installation.

#### Prerequisites

- You deployed an OpenShift Container Platform cluster.
- You installed the **oc** CLI.

#### Procedure

1. Export the **kubeadmin** credentials:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=<installation_directory>/auth/kubeconfig 1
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.

2. Verify you can run **oc** commands successfully using the exported configuration:

```
$ oc whoami
```

#### Example output

```
system:admin
```

#### Additional resources

- See [Accessing the web console](#) for more details about accessing and understanding the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

### 1.5.14. Disabling the default OperatorHub sources

Operator catalogs that source content provided by Red Hat and community projects are configured for OperatorHub by default during an OpenShift Container Platform installation. In a restricted network environment, you must disable the default catalogs as a cluster administrator.

#### Procedure

- Disable the sources for the default catalogs by adding **disableAllDefaultSources: true** to the **OperatorHub** object:

```
$ oc patch OperatorHub cluster --type json \  
-p '[{"op": "add", "path": "/spec/disableAllDefaultSources", "value": true}]'
```

**TIP**

Alternatively, you can use the web console to manage catalog sources. From the **Administration** → **Cluster Settings** → **Global Configuration** → **OperatorHub** page, click the **Sources** tab, where you can create, delete, disable, and enable individual sources.

**1.5.15. Telemetry access for OpenShift Container Platform**

In OpenShift Container Platform 4.6, the Telemetry service, which runs by default to provide metrics about cluster health and the success of updates, requires internet access. If your cluster is connected to the internet, Telemetry runs automatically, and your cluster is registered to [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#).

After you confirm that your [OpenShift Cluster Manager](#) inventory is correct, either maintained automatically by Telemetry or manually by using OpenShift Cluster Manager, [use subscription watch](#) to track your OpenShift Container Platform subscriptions at the account or multi-cluster level.

**Additional resources**

- See [About remote health monitoring](#) for more information about the Telemetry service

**1.5.16. Next steps**

- [Customize your cluster](#).
- If the mirror registry that you used to install your cluster has a trusted CA, add it to the cluster by [configuring additional trust stores](#).
- If necessary, you can [opt out of remote health reporting](#).
- [Configure image streams](#) for the Cluster Samples Operator and the **must-gather** tool.
- Learn how to [use Operator Lifecycle Manager \(OLM\) on restricted networks](#).
- If you did not configure RHOSP to accept application traffic over floating IP addresses, [configure RHOSP access with floating IP addresses](#).

**1.6. UNINSTALLING A CLUSTER ON OPENSTACK**

You can remove a cluster that you deployed to Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP).

**1.6.1. Removing a cluster that uses installer-provisioned infrastructure**

You can remove a cluster that uses installer-provisioned infrastructure from your cloud.

**NOTE**

After uninstallation, check your cloud provider for any resources not removed properly, especially with User Provisioned Infrastructure (UPI) clusters. There might be resources that the installer did not create or that the installer is unable to access.

**Prerequisites**

- Have a copy of the installation program that you used to deploy the cluster.

- Have the files that the installation program generated when you created your cluster.

## Procedure

1. From the directory that contains the installation program on the computer that you used to install the cluster, run the following command:

```
$ ./openshift-install destroy cluster \
--dir <installation_directory> --log-level info 1 2
```

- 1** For **<installation\_directory>**, specify the path to the directory that you stored the installation files in.
- 2** To view different details, specify **warn**, **debug**, or **error** instead of **info**.



### NOTE

You must specify the directory that contains the cluster definition files for your cluster. The installation program requires the **metadata.json** file in this directory to delete the cluster.

2. Optional: Delete the **<installation\_directory>** directory and the OpenShift Container Platform installation program.

## 1.7. UNINSTALLING A CLUSTER ON RHOSP FROM YOUR OWN INFRASTRUCTURE

You can remove a cluster that you deployed to Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) on user-provisioned infrastructure.

### 1.7.1. Downloading playbook dependencies

The Ansible playbooks that simplify the removal process on user-provisioned infrastructure require several Python modules. On the machine where you will run the process, add the modules' repositories and then download them.



### NOTE

These instructions assume that you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 8.

### Prerequisites

- Python 3 is installed on your machine.

### Procedure

1. On a command line, add the repositories:
  - a. Register with Red Hat Subscription Manager:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager register # If not done already
```

b. Pull the latest subscription data:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager attach --pool=$YOUR_POOLID # If not done already
```

c. Disable the current repositories:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager repos --disable=* # If not done already
```

d. Add the required repositories:

```
$ sudo subscription-manager repos \
  --enable=rhel-8-for-x86_64-baseos-rpms \
  --enable=openstack-16-tools-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms \
  --enable=ansible-2.9-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms \
  --enable=rhel-8-for-x86_64-appstream-rpms
```

2. Install the modules:

```
$ sudo yum install python3-openstackclient ansible python3-openstacksdk
```

3. Ensure that the **python** command points to **python3**:

```
$ sudo alternatives --set python /usr/bin/python3
```

## 1.7.2. Removing a cluster from RHOSP that uses your own infrastructure

You can remove an OpenShift Container Platform cluster on Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) that uses your own infrastructure. To complete the removal process quickly, run several Ansible playbooks.

### Prerequisites

- Python 3 is installed on your machine.
- You downloaded the modules in "Downloading playbook dependencies."
- You have the playbooks that you used to install the cluster.
- You modified the playbooks that are prefixed with **down-** to reflect any changes that you made to their corresponding installation playbooks. For example, changes to the **bootstrap.yaml** file are reflected in the **down-bootstrap.yaml** file.
- All of the playbooks are in a common directory.

### Procedure

1. On a command line, run the playbooks that you downloaded:

```
$ ansible-playbook -i inventory.yaml \
  down-bootstrap.yaml \
  down-control-plane.yaml \
  down-compute-nodes.yaml \
```

```
down-load-balancers.yaml \  
down-network.yaml      \  
down-security-groups.yaml
```

2. Remove any DNS record changes you made for the OpenShift Container Platform installation.

OpenShift Container Platform is removed from your infrastructure.